环球卓越
www.geedu.com

英语周计划系列丛书
ENGLISH WEEKLY PLAN SERIES

大学英语

新四级翻译、写作周计划

大学英语四六级考试命题研究组 ◎ 编著

CET4
WEEKLY
PLAN FOR TRANSLATION
AND WRITING

挑战我的方法，引爆你的潜力！逐周挑战，日渐升级！

新题型
第7版

机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

英语周计划系列丛书

大学英语新四级翻译、写作周计划

第 7 版

大学英语四六级考试命题研究组　编著

机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

“英语周计划系列丛书”是针对我国读者的英语学习特点开发的、以“周”为谋篇布局单位、以“日”为具体实施单元的极具特色的英语辅导用书，具有思维创新、规划科学、目标明确、讲练结合、直击实战等特点。《大学英语新四级翻译、写作周计划》是本系列针对 CET4 的一个分册。

自 2013 年 12 月 CET 考试改革后，翻译被提到前所未有重要的程度上来。而英语写作一直以来都是让考生头疼的一个难题，很多考生都觉得写作复习既耗时间和精力，又不易见到成效。编者依据多年阅卷经验和对各档次真题作文的对比分析，为考生提供了一个完整的 CET4 翻译、写作 4 周复习方案。帮助考生把握命题方向，确保在考场上胸有成竹。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

大学英语新四级翻译、写作周计划 / 大学英语四六级考试命题研究组编著. —7 版. —北京：机械工业出版社，2015. 7

（英语周计划系列丛书）

ISBN 978 – 7 – 111 – 50726 – 0

Ⅰ. ①大… Ⅱ. ①大… Ⅲ. ①大学英语水平考试– 翻译–自学参考资料 ②大学英语水平考试– 写作– 自学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①H315

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2015）第 136190 号

机械工业出版社（北京市百万庄大街 22 号 邮政编码 100037）
策划编辑：孙铁军 责任编辑：王庆龙
版式设计：张文贵 责任印制：
印刷厂印刷（×××装订）
2015 年 7 月第 7 版 · 第 1 次印刷
148mm × 210mm · 9. 375 印张 · 365 千字
0 001 – 5000 册

标准书号：ISBN 978 – 7 – 111 – 50726 – 0
定价：19. 80 元

凡购本书，如有缺页、倒页、脱页，由本社发行部调换

电话服务
服务咨询热线：（010）88361066
读者购书热线：（010）68326294
（010）88379203

网络服务
机 工 官 网：www. cmpbook. com
机 工 官 博：weibo. com/cmp1952
教育服务网：www. cmpedu. com
金 书 网：www. golden-book. com

封面无防伪标均为盗版

丛书序

“英语周计划系列丛书”的大学英语四级和六级两个系列共有 12 种书，自出版以来，以其科学的时间安排、精练的考点讲解、实用的技巧点拨、充足的针对性练习、细致的名师点评和贴心的版式编排，赢得了广大读者的好评。同时，各种真诚的建议和中肯的意见也纷至沓来。读者提出的建议都非常实用和贴心，让我们真切地体会到了广大读者对本丛书的厚爱，但也加深了心中的那份不安，因为我们深知，我们肩负着广大读者对我们的期望。

我们深知肩上的这份期望的分量，因此结合出版以来使用本书的考生的反馈意见，根据四、六级考试委员会 2013 年 12 月的最新考试题型，本着精益求精的宗旨，我们对丛书进行了精心的改版，目的是最大限度地满足读者的使用需求，让读者最终能够自信、从容地走进四、六级考场。

新版四、六级周计划系列主要有以下几个特点：

1. 紧跟变化、更具专业性

自 2013 年 12 月考次起，全国大学英语四、六级考试委员会对四、六级考试的试卷结构和测试题型做出了局部调整。编者对样题及近几次的真题进行了全面分析，针对各题型所做的调整，对丛书内容进行了及时的补充和更改，使得考生在短时间内充分了解新题型的特点和考查方式，从容应对一切变化。

2. 例题更新、更具实用性

各分册中的例题均紧跟考试，各题型均删去了陈旧的例题，换之以最新真题，让考生了解最新的试题形式和难度，也能更深入地领会书中所讲的知识和技巧。《大学英语新四级听力周计划》和《大学英语新六级听力周计划》两本书的真题录音部分也更新为最新真题录音，这样，考生不仅能边看讲解边听录音，还能通过最新录制的真题音频感受考场气氛。

3. 讲解更精、更突出重点

针对考生的弱点和考试的重点，本次改版对部分考点进行了更加细致的讲解，并对部分知识的讲解进行了重新编排，听力周计划和阅读周计划由原来的每周 6 天缩减至每周 5 天，写作周计划由原来的每周 7 天缩减至每周 6 天，讲解更精练，重点更突出。根据新题型的命题规律，听力周计划中短文

听写由单词和句子听写全部更换为单词和词组听写；阅读周计划中我们删去了快速阅读，替换成了长篇阅读，且六级阅读周计划中删去了简答，替换成了词汇理解；写作周计划更改为翻译、写作周计划，加入了新的汉译英题型，进行了全新编排。这样的安排方便考生在有限的时间里更彻底地掌握重点知识和技巧，更高效地备战考试。可以说，考生只要跟着周计划走过3～5周，在阅读中理解，在练习中体会，那么听力、阅读、翻译、写作各个环节的重点和难点自然便可迎刃而解。

4. 练习更强、更具针对性

对于练习材料中比较陈旧的题目和过时的设题进行了替换，按照最新真题的标准重新选材、设题，以期让考生在有限的时间里最大限度地熟悉考试的题型和答题的技巧，时刻和考试动态保持同步。

5. 解析更细、更加标准化

不管是书中的例题还是练习，改版后的解析都更加细致入微。同时，统一了解析模式，使考生使用起来更方便、更容易理解并掌握所学知识和技巧。

6. 录音更全、更便于备考

《大学英语新四级听力周计划》的录音时长达到420分钟，《大学英语新六级听力周计划》的录音时长更是达到了460分钟。超长的听力训练时间，不仅便于考生对讲解的知识点更深入地了解，而且也能让考生在备考中一直保持足够的量的积累，最终产生质的飞跃。

本丛书在出版前已经多个辅导班学生使用，结果证明，考生如按照本丛书的规划认真复习备考，定能有效提高复习效率，取得更加理想的考试成绩！本丛书是一线辅导教师的倾力之作，凝结了我们的大量心血，辅导精华尽现书中，可谓辅导和图书出版的完美结合。编者衷心希望本丛书能让更多考生受益，如是，将深感欣慰！

编　　者

2015年6月于中国人民大学

前　言

一直以来，英语中的翻译和写作都让考生十分头疼，很多考生都觉得复习翻译和写作既耗费时间和精力，又不容易见到成效。很多考生平时也做了不少练习，背了不少词汇和句式，但进入考场之后依旧是苦苦思索，难以下笔，写出来的句子也是错误百出。

翻译、写作失分原因

根据多年的一线教学和阅卷经验以及对学生复习和答题中存在的问题的深入分析，我们发现考生在翻译和写作中主要的失分原因有以下几点：

1. 平时训练不规范

很多同学在平时做翻译和写作训练时，由于没有考试氛围，往往不注意译文或作文的规范性，对自己的答题时间也没有限制，甚至边写边查字典或看答案，训练十分随意，不仅导致训练效果不明显，也使得考生走上考场后不能很快进入答题状态，也很难在规定的时间内进行规范作答。

2. 对英汉语言的差异了解不够

英汉语言有很大的差异，如果不了解这些差异，不管是在翻译中，还是在写作中，都容易出现中式英语的问题，还会出现很多表达不当或错误。比如，汉语多用主动，英语多用被动；汉语是动态语言，善用动词词组，英语是静态语言，善用介词词组和名词词组；汉语习惯用简短句子，英语习惯用复杂句子；汉语注重意合，英语注重形合。这些语言特点我们都要铭记于心，这样才能写出地道的英文句子和文章。

3. 缺乏框架和结构意识

不管是翻译还是写作，都要有框架结构意识。尤其是写作，在下笔之前一定要规划好文章包括几部分，各部分的主要内容是什么，各部分之间是一种什么样的关系，每一部分的详略如何安排。这些都要考虑清楚，否则写出的文章结构混乱，分不清主次，这样就算语言水平再高，也不可能得到高分。

4. 不擅长变换句式

很多同学在翻译和写作时，都只会大量地使用“主谓宾”的简单句式，即使偶尔使用从句，也不太擅长变换句式，只会盯着一两种从句反复用，这样写出的文章会比较死板，也不符合英文表达习惯，肯定无法让阅卷老师给出高分。

5. 对句子结构和句子成分重视不够

很多同学都清楚，句式过于简单或单一，是无法得到高分的，所以他们会有意识地在翻译或写作时使用长难句。但虽然很多同学在表达意思方面没有多大问题，却在使用长句时，经常出现结构和成分错误，这与大家平时在阅读、写作时不关注句子结构、不分析句中各词语充当的成分有很大关系。

我们的对策

我们结合翻译和写作两个题型的特点，针对考生经常遇到的问题和主要的失分原因，精心编写了本书。本书主要具有以下特色：

一、6 周时间，规划科学合理

本书内容安排在 6 周进行，每周学习 6 天，共 36 天。第一至二周针对翻译题型：第一周讲解翻译技巧和高频语法，带学生快速掌握词语、句子翻译的基本技巧，扫清高频语法和常用句式的翻译障碍；第二周预测翻译热点，进行实战演练，把握翻译命题方向。第四到六周针对写作题型：第四至五周，每周攻克一个高分作文要素，从 9 分 – 11 分 – 14 分稳步提升；第六周预测作文热点，帮助考生把握作文命题方向，确保走进考场时胸有成竹。

6 周的时间，每天一项明确的任务，讲透练透，目标明确，安排科学，让考生轻松实现翻译和写作高分梦想。

二、典型自测，进行自我诊断

在进入具体讲解之前，先给出典型的翻译和写作试题供考生自我检测，对答案给出详细的点评分析，并给考生提出合理的复习建议，让考生通过模拟自测，找出自己的弱点，明确努力方向。

三、翻译技巧，涵盖各个层面

第一周星期一至星期三，首先让同学们明确汉译英的基本步骤，然后带领同学们逐一学习词、句各类常用翻译技巧，掌握段落汉译英的高分策略。

四、各类句式，扫清汉译英语法结构障碍

第一周星期四至星期五，教同学们掌握 5 种基本句型的基本结构和基本

成分，了解定语从句、非谓语动词等常见的句式结构和语法规则，确保翻译出符合英语语言习惯的地道句式。

五、从单句翻译到段落翻译，带你将翻译练透练精

第一周每天的讲解都配有汉译英的专题演练，第一周复习结束时还配有8篇翻译练习，检验一周的复习效果。第二周配有40篇热点翻译预测，让考生熟悉热点，体验实战。

六、高频公式，轻松驾驭写作结构

第三周给出六类四级作文的高频结构公式，让考生通过套用公式熟悉各类作文的基本框架结构和行文思路，实现高分作文的第一步。

七、基本功能句，搞定各类作文段落

第四周熟悉四级写作中常见的段落类型，让考生了解各类段落类型的句型叙述，学会撰写各类段落的基本功能句。这样，在考场上无论碰上何种提纲，考生都能做到快速成段、自然过渡。

八、遣词造句，制造写作出彩亮点

第五周学习灵活变换长句短句、主动被动、强调倒装句等各类句式，巧妙运用限定词语、动态动词、抽象名词等亮点词语，谙熟并牢记100个四级写作闪光句式和用词，为考生的作文锦上添花，博得高分。

九、100篇作文，带你将写作练透练精

第三到五周每天的讲解都配有专题作文演练，每天结束时都配有佳作赏析；每周复习结束时都配有8篇作文练习，检验一周的复习效果，让考生学完一个，练透一个，彻底吃透所学的知识。第六周配有30篇预测作文。全书约100篇作文，让考生真正练透、练精。

编　者

目　录

丛书序
前言

第一部分　翻　译

翻译导学 …… 2

一、四级翻译透视 …… 2
二、典型试题自测 …… 3
三、译文及点评 …… 4
四、给考生的复习建议 …… 6

第一周　掌握翻译技巧，扫清语法障碍，确保超10分 …… 7

星期一　翻译基本步骤 …… 7
一、基本步骤 …… 7
二、专题演练 …… 8

星期二　词的翻译技巧 …… 10
一、词义选择 …… 10
二、词语增译 …… 11
三、词语减译 …… 12
四、词性转换 …… 13
五、专题演练 …… 14

星期三　句子翻译技巧 …… 17
一、主干的确定 …… 17
二、顺译或逆译 …… 18
三、合译或分译 …… 20
四、无主句的翻译 …… 20
五、语态的选择 …… 22
六、“使”字句和“让”字句的译法 …… 22
七、专题演练 …… 23

星期四　高频语法扫雷 …… 26
一、5 种基本句型 …… 26
二、名词性从句 …… 28
三、定语从句 …… 29
四、状语从句 …… 31
五、非谓语动词 …… 34
六、时态 …… 37
七、专题演练 …… 39

星期五　高分句式突破 …… 42
一、it 做形式主语或形式宾语 …… 42
二、强调句型 …… 44
三、比较句式 …… 44
四、并列结构 …… 46
五、专题演练 …… 47

星期六　一周复习效果检验 …… 50

第二周　预测翻译热点，进行实战演练 …… 60

一、热点演练 40 篇 …… 60
二、热点演练 40 篇参考答案 …… 75

第二部分　写　作

写作导学 …… 108

一、四级写作透视 …… 108
二、典型试题自测 …… 116
三、范文及点评 …… 117
四、给考生的复习建议 …… 119

第三周　套用高频公式，驾驭三段结构，轻松拿 9 分 …… 120

星期一　说明现象类作文结构 …… 120
一、什么是说明现象类作文 …… 120
二、常见结构公式陈列 …… 121
三、结构公式真题演示 …… 122

四、典型作文操练 …… 123
五、每日佳作赏析 …… 125

星期二　对策方法类作文结构 …… 126
一、什么是对策方法类作文 …… 126
二、常见结构公式陈列 …… 126
三、结构公式真题演示 …… 127
四、典型作文操练 …… 128
五、每日佳作赏析 …… 129

星期三　对比分析类作文结构 …… 130
一、什么是对比分析类作文 …… 130
二、常见结构公式陈列 …… 131
三、结构公式真题演示 …… 131
四、典型作文操练 …… 132
五、每日佳作赏析 …… 134

星期四　道理阐释类作文结构 …… 135
一、什么是道理阐释类作文 …… 135
二、常见结构公式陈列 …… 135
三、结构公式真题演示 …… 136
四、典型作文操练 …… 137
五、每日佳作赏析 …… 138

星期五　叙事类和应用类作文结构 …… 139
一、叙事类作文结构公式 …… 139
二、叙事类典型作文操练 …… 141
三、应用类作文结构公式 …… 142
四、应用类典型作文操练 …… 152
五、每日佳作赏析 …… 156

星期六　一周复习效果检验 …… 157

第四周　熟悉段落构成，掌握基本功能句，确保 11 分 …… 164

星期一　如何写概述现象段和描写图表段 …… 164
一、段落基本句型构造 …… 164
二、各类功能句常规写法 …… 166
三、典型段落操练 …… 171

四、每日佳作赏析 …… 173

星期二　如何写说明原因段和说明方法段 …… 174
一、段落基本句型构造 …… 174
二、各类功能句常规写法 …… 176
三、典型段落操练 …… 181
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 183

星期三　如何写说明危害段和说明好处段 …… 184
一、段落基本句型构造 …… 184
二、各类功能句常规写法 …… 186
三、典型段落操练 …… 190
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 192

星期四　如何写提出观点段和总结观点段 …… 193
一、段落基本句型构造 …… 193
二、各类功能句常规写法 …… 194
三、典型段落操练 …… 200
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 202

星期五　如何写论证观点段和对比论证段 …… 203
一、段落基本句型构造 …… 203
二、各类功能句常规写法 …… 204
三、典型段落操练 …… 207
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 208

星期六　一周复习效果检验 …… 209

第五周　灵活变换句式，瞄准用词亮点，突破 14 分 …… 217

星期一　把握组句技巧和用词原则 …… 217
一、组句技巧 …… 217
二、用词原则 …… 219
三、典型真题词句点评 …… 220
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 221

星期二　如何合理搭配长短句 …… 222
一、长句的用法 …… 222
二、短句的用法 …… 223
三、长短句变换练习 …… 223

四、每日佳作赏析 …… 225

星期三　如何制造亮点句式 …… 226
一、倒装句和强调句 …… 226
二、含有插入语的句子 …… 226
三、含有平行结构的句子 …… 227
四、含有非谓语动词的句子 …… 228
五、含有谚语格言的句子 …… 228
六、亮点句式改写练习 …… 229
七、每日佳作赏析 …… 230

星期四　如何制造亮点词语 …… 232
一、选用具体的词 …… 232
二、恰当使用限定词 …… 232
三、注意区分近义词 …… 233
四、学会使用动态动词 …… 233
五、学会活用不同的词性 …… 233
六、学会使用介词短语 …… 234
七、亮点词语改写练习 …… 234
八、每日佳作赏析 …… 236

星期五　100 个闪光短语和 100 个闪光句式 …… 237
一、100 个闪光短语 …… 237
二、100 个闪光句式 …… 246
三、每日佳作赏析 …… 254

星期六　一周复习效果检验 …… 255

第六周　预测作文热点，进行实战演练 …… 262
一、热点演练 30 篇 …… 262
二、热点演练参考范文 …… 270

第一部分

翻　译

翻译导学 >>>

一、四级翻译透视

（一）翻译命题方向

自 2013 年 12 月考次起，四级考试中原来的单句汉译英调整为段落汉译英，段落长度为 180 ~ 200 个汉字。翻译部分的分值也由原来的 5% 提升到 15%，考试时间由原来的 5 分钟延长至 30 分钟。

1. 翻译题材

翻译的题材涉及中国的历史、文化、经济、社会发展等。比如，2014 年 12 月四级三套试卷的翻译题材分别是关于“中国的互联网发展”“国宝大熊猫”“中国年轻人对旅游的兴趣”；2013 年 12 四级三套试卷的翻译题材分别是关于“茶文化”“中国结”“中国烹饪”。翻译的汉语原文中经常会给出几个较难单词或短语的英文注释，比如，关于“大熊猫”的翻译中给出的注释有：大熊猫（giant panda）、世界自然基金会（WWF）；关于“中国结”的翻译中给出的注释有：中国结（the Chinese knot）、手工艺（handicraft）。

2. 翻译考查重点

翻译题型由原来的句子翻译变成现在的段落翻译，其考查重点以及要使用的技巧也有所变化。原来的句子翻译主要考查语法现象或是某个短语的用法，而段落翻译并不专注于语法问题的考查，而是更看重翻译的整体流畅性和用词的准确性。比起原来的单句翻译，段落翻译有些类似写作，更加考验考生对语言的整体运用能力，除了对词汇的要求更高外，汉语和英语的逻辑转换、如何选用最合适的词来将抽象的中文意义表达清楚、如何在结构和意义上使前后句子有效地衔接从而形成连贯的篇章，这是对考生的最大挑战。

（二）翻译评分标准

按百分制计算，翻译部分满分 15 分，评分标准共分为五个等级：1 ~ 3 分、4 ~ 6 分、7 ~ 9 分、10 ~ 12 分、13 ~ 15 分。各档次的具体评判标准如下：

13 ~ 15 分——译文准确表达了原文的意思。用词贴切，行文流畅，基本上无语言错误，仅有个别小错。

10 ~ 12 分——译文基本上表达了原文的意思。文字通顺、连贯，无重大语言错误。

7 ~ 9 分——译文勉强表达了原文的意思。用词欠准确，语言错误相当多，其中有些是严重语言错误。

4 ~ 6 分——译文仅表达了一小部分原文的意思。用词不准确，有相当多的严重语言错误。

1 ~ 3 分——译文支离破碎。除个别词语或句子，绝大部分文字没有表达原文意思。

0 分——未作答，或只有几个孤立的词，或译文与原文毫不相关。

从评分标准为看，翻译考试的要求并不苛刻，只要译文基本表达了原文的意思，文字通顺、连贯，无重大语言错误，就可以得到 10 ~ 12 分，表达如果再准确一些，就可以得到更高的分数。所以考生在翻译时不必过于苛求使用难词和复杂句式，尽量选取自己有把握的词语或句式，将原文意思表达清楚即可。当然，如果用词地道准确，句式富于变化，也会给阅卷老师留下好印象，增加得高分的机会。

即使基础不是很好，也不必有畏难情绪。只要加以适当的学习和专项训练，掌握了翻译的基本原则和基本步骤，拿到 10 分以上并不是难事。

二、典型试题自测

自测一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

“你要茶还是要咖啡?”是用餐人常被问到的问题。许多西方人会选咖啡，而中国人则会选茶。相传，中国的一位帝王于五千多年前发现了茶，并用来治病。在明清（the Ming and Qing Dynasties）期间，茶馆遍布全国。饮茶在六世纪传到日本，但直到十七、十八世纪才传到欧美。如今，茶是世界上最流行的饮料（beverage）之一。茶是中国的民族饮品，也是中国传统和文化的重要组成部分。

自测二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

剪纸（paper cutting）是中国最为流行的传统民间艺术形式之一。中国剪纸有一千五百多年的历史，在明朝和清朝（the Ming and Qing Dynasties）时期特别流行。人们常用剪纸美化居家环境。特别是在春节和婚庆期间，剪纸被用来装

饰门窗和房间，以增加喜庆的气氛。剪纸最常用的颜色是红色，象征健康和兴旺。中国剪纸在世界各地很受欢迎，经常被用作馈赠外国友人的礼物。

三、译文及点评

自测一

①“你要茶还是要咖啡?”是用餐人常被问到的问题。②许多西方人会选咖啡，而中国人则会选茶。③相传，中国的一位帝王于五千多年前发现了茶，并用来治病。④在明清(the Ming and Qing Dynasties)期间，茶馆遍布全国。⑤饮茶在六世纪传到日本，但直到十七、十八世纪才传到欧美。⑥如今，茶是世界上最流行的饮料(beverage)之一。⑦茶是中国的民族饮品，也是中国传统和文化的重要组成部分。	①“Tea or coffee?” **That's** a question often **asked** when people have a meal. ② Many Westerners would choose coffee, **while** the Chinese would choose tea. ③ **Legend has it that tea was discovered** by a Chinese emperor five thousand years ago, and was used to cure disease. ④ During the Ming and Qing Dynasties, tea houses **were** spread all over the country. ⑤ Tea drinking was introduced to Japan in the 6th century, but **it was not until** the 17th or the 18th century that it spread to Europe and America. ⑥ Nowadays, tea is **one of the most popular beverages** in the world. ⑦ It is **not only** the national beverage of China, **but also** an important part of Chinese tradition and culture.

主题：中国传统文化——饮茶

难点及词汇注释：

句①：主语为问句“你要茶还是要咖啡?”，较长，所以可将其拆分成两句话，第1句为简短的口语问句“Tea or coffee?”，第2句用 That 指代该问句，做主语。“被问到的”可用过去分词 asked 做定语，修饰 question。

句②：“而”表示前后对比，可用 while 来引导分句。

句③：“相传……”是常用句型，可译为“Legend has it that…”或“As legend goes…”。“发现了茶”和“用来治病”译为并列谓语，用 and 连接。从句译为主动语态或被动语态皆可，但译为被动语态更能突出本文的主题“tea”。

句④：“明清期间”提示时态应用一般过去时。

句⑤：“但”提示前后两个句子存在转折关系，可用 but 连接；“直到……才……”可以用“it was not until… that…”句型进行强调。
句⑥：“是最……的……之一”用“be one of the + 形容词最高级 + 名词复数”句型。
句⑦：“是……也是……”，表并列，可用“not only… but also…”句型。

自测二

① 剪纸（paper cutting）是中国最为流行的传统民间艺术形式之一。② 中国剪纸有一千五百多年的历史，在明朝和清朝（the Ming and Qing Dynasties）时期特别流行。③ 人们常用剪纸美化居家环境。④ 特别是在春节和婚庆期间，剪纸被用来装饰门窗和房间，以增加喜庆的气氛。⑤ 剪纸最常用的颜色是红色，象征健康和兴旺。⑥ 中国剪纸在世界各地很受欢迎，经常被用作馈赠外国友人的礼物。	① Paper cutting is **one of** China's most popular traditional **folk arts**. ② Chinese paper cutting **has a history of more than 1, 500 years**. **It was widespread** particularly during the Ming and Qing Dynasties. ③ People often **beautify** their homes **with** paper cuttings. ④ During the Spring Festival and wedding celebrations, **in particular**, paper cuttings are used to decorate doors, windows and rooms **in order to** enhance the joyous atmosphere. ⑤ The color **most frequently used in paper cutting** is red, **which** symbolizes health and prosperity. ⑥ Chinese paper cutting is very popular around the world **and** it is often given as a present to foreign friends.

主题：中国传统文化——剪纸

难点及词汇注释：

句①：表示“……之一”用 one of…，后面的名词应为可数名词复数形式。“民间艺术”类似专有名词，用 folk arts 表达；至于后面的“形式”不需要死板地将其译出，加上 forms 不符合英文表达习惯。

句②：本句的汉语是由逗号隔开的两个句子组成，后一句是对前一句的进一步说明，但前后两句既没有明显的从属关系，也不是并列关系，因此既不能译成主从复合句，也最好不要译成并列句，直接将其译成两个句子即可，后一句中 It 指代前一句的主语 Chinese paper cutting，形成了自然的衔接。表示“有多长的历史”用短语 have a history of…。本句中又出现了“流行”一词，英语中强调词语的多样化，因此为了避免重复，这里我不再使用 popular，而用了 widespread，“明清时期”显然时态应该是一般过去时。

句③：有些同学可能会按照汉语句子的语序将本句译为“… use paper cuttings to beautify their homes…”，这样虽也不算错，但不如借用介词 with 将

表达的重点放在“美化”一词上更为地道，即译为：… beautify their homes with paper cuttings…

句④：“特别，尤其”可以用 especially 或 in particular，especially 一般放在要强调的内容之前，而 in particular 位置比较灵活。“以……”表示一种目的，译为“in order to…”结构。

句⑤：“剪纸最常用的”是“颜色”的定语，故译为过去分词短语… used in paper cutting，“最常”译为副词的最高级 most frequently，修饰动词 used。“象征健康和希望”是对“红色”的补充说明，故译为非限制性定语从句，which 代替先行词 red。

句⑥：本句是描述剪纸在世界上受欢迎的情况，逗号前后是并列关系，故译成 and 连接的并列句。注意“用作礼物”不要直译为“used as a present”。

四、给考生的复习建议

我们相信，同学们在做完了上面的两个典型真题段落翻译并将自己的译文与所给译文进行对比以后，一定已经对自己在翻译方面的弱势有所体会。

从这两段翻译中，我们不难发现翻译的主题经常涉及中国的历史、文化和社会发展，尽管大多数考生对这些话题并不陌生，但却对其中很多对应的英文主题词汇并不熟悉，再加上我们平时很少进行规范的翻译训练，也不了解翻译的基本技巧，因此即使自己的语法功底和词汇都没有问题，也不能很好地将话题内容切换成地道的英文表达。

对此，我们给考生的复习建议是：

1. 掌握翻译的基本技巧。

汉语和英语两种语言在词语和句式的使用上存在很大不同，词性、词语的省略、增补习惯以及句式结构上都会有差别，因此我们在进行翻译训练的同时要注意了解这些不同，掌握汉译英中常用的一些技巧，以使我们的训练更有针对性，更快地提高我们的翻译能力。

2. 学会利用教材。

其实，我们的教材中就有很多涉及历史、文化等方面内容的段落，考生在今后的学习中要多加留意，熟悉相关话题和词汇，并将其译成汉语来理解，以熟悉中英文的切换表达。

3. 平时要有意识地进行段落翻译的训练。

找一些地道的中英文对照材料（比如中、高级翻译教材），对书中涉及中国历史、文化、经济、社会发展等话题的段落进行汉译英训练，然后比对标准译文找出错误和问题，最终提高翻译的准确性，并提升翻译的速度，确保在规定的时间内完成。

第一周

掌握翻译技巧，扫清语法障碍，确保超10分

段落翻译与单个的句子翻译不同，它涉及对词、句、篇三个层面上翻译能力的考查，考查考生对语言的整体运用能力，因此我们对段落翻译的复习也要从词、句、篇三个层面上逐一进行，学会各个层面上的基本翻译技巧，掌握段落翻译的高分策略。

星期一　翻译基本步骤

比起单句翻译，段落翻译有些类似写作，更加考验考生对语言的整体运用能力。因此，在进行段落翻译时，我们应该有一个清晰的做题思路，不能简单地将所给汉语逐句翻译出来了事。

一、基本步骤

汉译英段落翻译通常应该采用如下解题步骤：

第一步：通读所给汉语段落。

汉译英考查的段落意思和结构都比较完整，都会有一个明确的主题和中心，下笔翻译之前，要首先通读该段落，明确段落的中心，熟悉各句的内容，并确定整个段落的基本时态。

第二步：逐句进行分析翻译。

翻译每句之前要判断该句是简单句还是复杂句，考虑该句与前后句子在意思和结构上的衔接，是否需要分译或合译。分析句子结构，划分句子成分以及分析各成分之间的关系，选取恰当的词语表达。

第三步：将译文与汉语原文进行对照检查。

将翻译出的段落与汉语段落逐句进行对照检查，确保译文与汉语在意思和时态上相符，并检查是否有漏译或多译，是否有词语使用不当。

第四步：再次通读译文，确保译文的完整连贯。

最后再次通读译文，确保译文是一个完整连贯的段落，而不是对汉语句子的生硬翻译。

二、专题演练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

书法是中国的国粹（quintessence），风行于中华大地数千年而不衰。它与绘画、雕塑、诗歌、音乐、舞蹈、戏剧一样，是艺术大家庭的一员。书法在中国几乎无处不在，与日常生活紧密相连。它还是全国爱好者和习艺人数最多的一种艺术。在货品琳琅满目、现代商业气息特浓的现在，点缀着一些具有古色古香文化色彩的书法作品，便使景色增添几分高雅，喧嚣气氛得到了净化。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

每个特殊的中国节日都有美食的陪伴。美食在中华文化中扮演着重要角色，所以它有其象征意义也并不奇怪。食物的象征意义可以来源于外形本身或者名字发音。在中国，鱼有着特殊的象征意义。比如，端上的整条鱼是富饶的象征。宴会的习俗是最后端上整鱼。鱼头对着贵宾。鱼的象征意义也来自于中文中鱼的发音，和表示富有和充裕的“余”同音，而且人们相信吃鱼会让他们在来年心想事成。

练习一　参考答案

① 书法是中国的国粹，风行于中华大地数千年而不衰。② 它与绘画、雕塑、诗歌、音乐、舞蹈、戏剧一样，是艺术大家庭的一员。③ 书法在中国几乎无处不在，与日常生活紧密相连。④ 它还是全国爱好者和习艺人数最多的一种艺术。⑤ 商店和购物中心经常挂着名人的书法作品，为繁忙、喧嚣的商业领域增添了几分古朴、典雅。	① Calligraphy is the quintessence of Chinese culture and has flourished for several thousand years. ② Like painting, sculpture, poetry, music, dance and opera, it is a member of the family of arts. ③ Calligraphy can be found everywhere in China, and is closely linked to daily life. ④ In addition, it leads other arts in the number of people who love and practice it. ⑤ Works of calligraphy by famous figures are often found in shops and shopping centers, adding an antique elegance to busy and noisy trading areas.

主题：中国传统文化——书法

难点及词汇注释：

句① 含有两个独立的句子，可将其译为 and 连接的两个并列分句，其中第二个分句“风行……数千年”提示此处应用现在完成时态。

句②“与……一样”可以翻译成状语 Like…。

句③ 与句① 结构相似，均由并列句子构成。

句④ 可以翻译成“It has the most people who love it and practice it”，但这样则显得平淡无奇，此时可以用 lead 一词来表达。

句⑤ 应翻译成被动语态，符合英语的表达习惯。“为……增添了几分古朴、典雅”可翻译成伴随状语。

练习二　参考答案

① 每个特殊的中国节日都有美食的陪伴。② 美食在中华文化中扮演着重要角色，所以它有其象征意义也并不奇怪。③ 食物的象征意义可以来源于外形本身或者名字发音。④ 在中国，鱼有着特殊的象征意义。⑤ 比如，端上的整条鱼是富饶的象征。⑥ 宴会的习俗是最后端上整鱼。⑦ 鱼头对着贵宾。⑧ 鱼的象征意义也来自于中文中鱼的发音，和表示富有和充裕的“余”同音，而且人们相信吃鱼会让他们在来年心想事成。	① There is no major holiday that isn't celebrated with a special festive food. ② Given the important role food plays in Chinese culture, it is not surprising that many foods have symbolic meaning. ③ The symbolic significance of a food may be based on its appearance or on how the Chinese word sounds. ④ Fish holds a special symbolic significance in Chinese culture. ⑤ For example, a fish served whole is a symbol of prosperity. ⑥ At a banquet it is customary to serve the whole fish last, pointed toward the guest of honor. ⑦ Fish also has symbolic significance because the Chinese word for fish, yu, sounds like the word for riches or abundance, and it is believed that eating fish will help your wishes come true in the year to come.

主题：中国传统文化——“鱼”的象征意义

难点及词汇注释：

句① 为了表示强调，可用双重否定来表达，即 no… isn't…。“festive food”译为“节日食物”。

句② 可将“美食在中华文化中扮演着重要角色”译为状语“Given the…”。“象征意义”译为“symbolic meaning”。

句⑤“端上的整条”可译为过去分词短语“served whole”，做后置定语，修饰 fish。

句⑥ ⑦ 可合译为一句，“对着贵宾”可译为“point toward the guest of honor”。

句⑧ 可用 because 引导原因状语从句来解释“鱼”象征含义的来源。“而且”提示应用 and 连接句子；本句中并不强调“人们”，所以应使用被动语态“it is believed that…”；“在来年”可译为“in the year to come”。

星期二　词的翻译技巧

一、词义选择

正确的选词是保证译文质量的重要环节。英语和汉语中都存在大量的一词多义现象，在不同的语境下词语所表达的含义也会不同，所以我们在翻译时要根据上下文确定词语的确切含义，再来选择合适的英语译文。具体来说，有以下几点要注意：

1. 小心字面意思的陷阱，要结合语境分析汉语所表达的确切含义。

例 1：汉语：发展是**硬**道理。

译文：Development is the **primary** principle.

分析：汉语中的“硬”字一般对应英文中的 hard，但这里的“硬”并非与“软”相反，而是具有“最基本的，最重要的”之意，因此用 primary“主要的，基本的”或 absolute“绝对的”都可以体现出“发展的重要性”这一含义。

例 2：汉语：生产生活条件**明显**改善。

译文：Production and living conditions have **remarkably** improved.

分析：汉语中“明显”一词一般对应英文中的 obviously，但该词强调的是“清楚，显而易见”之意，而本句中的“明显”是强调改善的程度，故选用 remarkably 或 markedly 更加恰当。

2. 注意词语的修饰和搭配关系。

例 1：汉语：国企和外企的**差距**正在**缩小**。

译文：The **gap** between the state-owned enterprises and the foreign-funded enterprises is **narrowing**.

分析：此处的“差距”强调的是距离，而非“不同”，故选用 gap 而不是 difference 一词。而 gap 的加大或缩小要符合英文的搭配习惯，不能用 bigger 或 smaller，而要用 widening 或 narrowing。

例 2：汉语：新兴产业所占比重还不大。

译文：The **proportion** of emerging industries is **low**.

分析：表示“占有的比重”一般用 proportion，而 proportion 的“大小”在英文中应该用 high 或 low 来表达，而不用 big 或 small。

3. 注意词语的语体色彩和感情色彩。

例 1：汉语：赌博在中国是被**禁止**的。

译文：Gambling is **prohibited** in China.

分析：我们经常可以看到表示“禁止”字样的一些标语，比如 no smoking“禁止吸烟”，no parking“禁止停车”，但这是一种非正式的语体，在正式的翻译中不能随意使用，故此处的“禁止赌博”不能译为 no gambling，而应该用 prohibit“禁止”一词来表达。

例 2：汉语：黄金荣是旧社会上海**有名的**大流氓。

译文：Huang Jinrong was a **notorious** rogue in Shanghai in the old times.

分析：表示“有名的”我们可以用 famous，well-known，notable，renowned，但这几个词都更倾向于表示褒义，尤其是 notable 和 renowned，而此处明显是表示贬义，故用表示贬义的 notorious“臭名昭著的”表达最为合适。

二、词语增译

增译法是汉译英中十分常用的一种翻译技巧，它是指在将汉语原文中省略或缺少的表示语法结构的词语增补上，从而使英文译文结构完整，表达准确。

1. 结构增补

汉语注重“意合”，有很多省略，比如无主句。而英语注重“形合”，必须具备完整的主谓结构，且出现两个及以上的主谓结构时必须使用连词。因此，在汉译英的过程中，我们经常需要进行结构上的词语增补。此外，冠词、代词、介词在汉语中经常省略，在英语中我们必须把它们增译出来，才能确保结构的完整性。

例 1：汉语：货收到后应立即付款。

译文：**You** are supposed to pay right after the goods are delivered.

分析：所给汉语是一个无主句，翻译时增补出主语 You，明确了动作的实施者，确保英文句子结构完整。

例 2：汉语：剪纸最常用的颜色是红色，象征健康和兴旺。

译文：The color most frequently used in paper cutting is red，**which** symbolizes health and prosperity.

分析："象征健康和兴旺"的逻辑主语是"红色"，故翻译时应该将主语增译出来；但前面已经是一个完整的句子，逗号后面就应该译成从句，用 which 引导，代替 red 在从句中做主语。

2. 语义增补

有时候我们将汉语原文正常译出后，句子意思的表达还不够清晰或完整，这时我们就要进行适当的词语增补。需要注意的是，增补的内容必须是原文中本身有的，只是没有明确表达出来，切不可无中生有，随意增补。

例 1：汉语：中国有 13 亿人口，占全球的五分之一。

译文：China has a population of 1.3 billion, accounting for one-fifth of the **population** of the world.

分析：后半句"占全球的五分之一"的完整意思是"占全球人口的五分之一"，如果按照汉语对应译成 accounting for one-fifth of the world 则会导致表达不合逻辑，因此需增译出 population。

例 2：汉语：要提倡顾全大局。

译文：**We** should advocate the **spirit** of taking the whole situation into consideration.

分析：汉语中所说的"顾全大局"是一种要提倡的"精神"，在英文中要将其增译出来，即译成 the spirit of taking… consideration 才能够和 advocate 构成合理的搭配关系，才能够构成准确的表达。

三、词语减译

减译法与增译法相反，是指将原文中某些词语略去不译，从而使译文更加简洁、流畅，更符合英文表达习惯。减译时要注意不能影响原文的意思表达。

1. 略去汉语中意义或形式重复的词语

汉语中为了表达明确、生动，经常采用排比或重复等手段，而英语讲究简练、紧凑，经常采用省略或替代的方式来处理重复信息。

例 1：汉语：在饮食方面，中国各省的习惯**不一样**，口味也**不一样**。

译文：Eating habits and tastes **differ** from province to province in China.

分析："不一样"在原文中出现两次，为了符合英语表达简洁的习惯，我们将"口味"和"习惯"放到一起充当主语，省略了一个"不一样"。

例 2：汉语：有机食品的**发展壮大**给农民、食品生产者和消费者带来了很多好处。

译文：The **growth** in the organic food sector has brought many benefits to

farmers, food producers and consumers.

分析：原文中“发展”“壮大”两个词语意思相同，故只译成 growth 一词即可。

2. 略去汉语中表示范畴的词语

汉语中有一些表示范畴的词语，比如工作、情况、现象、水平、局面、态度等，当这些词语前面有了明确内容的时候它们就不表示具体意义，而只是对前面内容所属范畴的说明，译成英文的时候通常可以将这类范畴词省略不译。

例 1：汉语：中国政府历来重视**环境保护工作**。

译文：Chinese government has always attached great importance to **environmental protection**.

分析：“工作”在这里是起到说明范畴的作用，不具有实际意义，故不需要译出。

例 2：汉语：无论一个人的地位有多高，他都不应该用**傲慢、粗鲁的态度**去对待他人。

译文：No matter how high his position is, one should not treat others **arrogantly and rudely**.

分析：“傲慢”“粗鲁”本身就表示态度，译成英文时如果把“态度”一词也对应译出来，不符合英文的表达习惯。

四、词性转换

汉语和英语在词性使用上存在较大差别，汉语中动词使用较多，而英语中名词、介词、形容词使用频率都比动词要高。另外，二者有关词性使用的语法规则也不尽相同，因此在汉译英时要进行适当的词性转换，以使译文更符合英语的表达习惯。

1. 动词的词性转换

在汉译英中，动词的词性转换最为频繁，最常见的是转换成名词、形容词、介词短语。

例 1：汉语：孩子们**看**电视过多会大大地**损坏**视力。

译文：Too much **exposure** to TV programs will do great **harm** to the eyesight of children.

分析：汉语中的动词“看”转换成英语中的名词 exposure“暴露”，汉语中的动词“伤害”转换成了英语中的名词 harm。

例 2：汉语：通常每个家庭都会在除夕夜团聚，一起**吃**年夜饭。

译文：New Year's Eve is usually an occasion for Chinese families to gather **for** the annual reunion dinner.

分析：汉语中的动词短语"吃年夜饭"转换成了英语中的介词短语 for the annual reunion dinner。

2. 其他词性的转换

除了动词的词性转换，汉语中的名词转换成动词、形容词转换成名词或动词等现象在汉译英中也会时有发生。

例 1：汉语：由于我们**实行**了改革开放政策，我国的综合国力有了明显的**增强**。

译文：Thanks to the **introduction** of our reform and opening policy, our comprehensive national strength has greatly **improved**.

分析：汉语中的动词"实行"转换成了英语中的名词 introduction，汉语中的名词"增强"转换成了英语中的动词 improved。

例 2：汉语：在中国人的文化中，酒和茶是**不可缺少的**。

译文：Liquid and tea are **necessities** in the life of Chinese people.

分析：汉语中的形容词"不可缺少的"转换成英语中的名词 necessities。

五、专题演练

1. **汉语**：人们庆祝清明节大约始于东周时代，距今已有两千五百多年的历史。
   译文：_____
2. **汉语**：凡是使用过筷子的外国人，都因其使用方便、物美价廉而赞叹不绝。
   译文：_____
3. **汉语**：孟子（Mencius）的母亲曾经三度迁居，只为了帮助她的孩子找到一个合适的成长环境。
   译文：_____
4. **汉语**：北京烤鸭是北京的招牌菜，它的独到之处在于不仅味道鲜美，而且含有丰富的营养价值。
   译文：_____
5. **汉语**：中国四大发明，在人类科学文化史上留下了光辉灿烂的一页，推动了人类历史的前进。
   译文：_____
6. **汉语**：四千多年前，中国人就开始有饮茶的习惯了。
   译文：_____

7. **汉语**：几千年来，端午节的特色在于吃粽子（glutinous dumplings）和赛龙舟，尤其是在一些河湖密布的南方省份。

   译文：_____

8. **汉语**：近代以来，亚洲经历了曲折和艰难的发展历程。

   译文：_____

9. **汉语**：今天，人们所看到的亚洲发展成就，是勤劳智慧的亚洲人民不屈不挠、锲而不舍奋斗的结果。

   译文：_____

10. **汉语**：戒烟贵在坚持，坚持下去就是收获。

    译文：_____

11. **汉语**：中国的崛起，让这些人充分认识到孩子掌握双语的好处。

    译文：_____

12. **汉语**：随着中国逐渐崛起成为政治经济强国，海外人士学习汉语的现象与日俱增。

    译文：_____

13. **汉语**：一个民族的优秀文化遗产，不仅仅属于一个民族，它会逐渐传播到世界而成为人类的共同财富。

    译文：_____

14. **汉语**：自从改革开放以来，中国发生了巨大的变化。

    译文：_____

15. **汉语**：在参加宴会、出席音乐会、观看乒乓球表演之后，他还得起草报告。

    译文：_____

参考答案

1. **译文**：The celebration for the Qingming Festival can be traced back to the Eastern Zhou Dynasty, with a history of over 2, 500 years.

   分析：原文中的动词“庆祝”转换成了译文中的名词 celebration；“人们”是泛指，不需要译出；“距今”的含义已经包含在“历史”当中，也不需要译出。

2. **译文**：Those foreigners who have ever used chopsticks marvel at their convenience, excellent quality and reasonable price.

   分析：汉语中的“动词＋副词”短语“使用方便”和“名词＋形容词”短语“物美”和“价廉”都转译成了英文中的“形容词＋名词”短语。

3. **译文**：Mencius' mother moved home three times only to find an environment that she felt suitable for the child's upbringing.

   分析：这里的“合适”是孟母认为的合适，故我们增译出 she felt，使译文表

达更加准确。

4. **译文**：As a specialty of Beijing cuisine, Beijing roast duck is unique in not only its delicious taste but also its rich nutritional value.

   分析：原文中的名词短语“独到之处”转换成了形容词 unique；主谓结构“味道鲜美”和动宾结构“含有丰富的营养价值”都转换成了“形容词 + 名词”短语，二者通过 not only… but also 连接成并列结构。

5. **译文**：The Four Great Inventions of ancient China are brilliant in human science and culture history and promote the progress of human history.

   分析：“留下光辉灿烂的一页”直接减译成一个形容词 brilliant 即可。

6. **译文**：Ancient Chinese people formed a habit of drinking tea early in about 4,000 years ago.

   分析：“中国人”前面增译出 ancient“古代的”，表达更加明确；“就”字强调时间的“早”，故我们增译出 early；“开始”已经包含在译文当中，不需要再对应译出，故省去不译。

7. **译文**：For thousands of years, the Duanwu Festival has been marked by glutinous dumplings and dragon boat races, especially in the southern provinces where there are many rivers and lakes.

   分析：原文中的名词“特色”转译成动词 mark 的被动结构 be marked by；动词短语“吃粽子”和“赛龙舟”在此并不强调动作，故都转译成了名词短语；动词“密布”转译成了形容词 many。

8. **译文**：In modern times, Asia experienced twists and turns in its development.

   分析：如果按照原文直接将“曲折的”和“艰难的”译作“发展历程”的定语，不符合英文的表达和搭配习惯。原文的意思其实就是“亚洲在发展历程中经历了曲折和艰难”，故我们将形容词“曲折的”和“艰难的”转译成名词 twists and turns；而 in its development 就含有“发展历程”之意，不需要将“历程”翻译出来。

9. **译文**：Asia's development achievements today are the result of the persistent efforts of the industrious and talented Asian people.

   分析：“人们所看到的”并不具备实际含义，没有它也不影响原文的表达，为了表达的简洁，我们将其略去不译。“不屈不挠”“锲而不舍”含义接近，故我们只需译出一个即可。

10. **译文**：To quit smoking requires persistence and so long as one persists, he'll be rewarded.

    分析：“贵在”就是“在于”的意思，不需要再将“贵”字翻译出来；“坚持下去”是一种条件，故增译条件状语从句的引导词 as/so long as，表示“只要”，并增译出表示泛指的主语 one。原文中“收获”是名词，但“就是

收获”直译成英文不能形成合理的搭配，故我们将“收获”转译成动词 reward 的被动形式 be rewarded。

11. **译文：**China's rise has fully awakened these people's awareness of the fact that their kids can benefit from their bilingual ability.

    分析：翻译时，我们将动词“认识到”转换成名词 awareness；将名词“好处”转换成动词 benefit；将动宾短语“掌握双语”转译成“形容词＋名词”短语 bilingual ability。

12. **译文：**As China is rising as a political and economic world power, more and more people in overseas countries start to learn Chinese.

    分析：as 引导时间状语从句，本身就含有“逐渐”之意，故我们可以将“逐渐”一词略去不译。“现象与日俱增”如直译成英文，逻辑不通，故我们将“现象”略去不译，而将动词短语“与日俱增”转换成形容词短语 more and more，修饰 people。

13. **译文：**The fine culture of a nation doesn't belong to the nation alone and it will be spread to the rest of the world and shared by all humanity.

    分析：形容词“共同的”转译成动词 share 的被动结构 shared by。

14. **译文：**Great changes have taken place in China since the introduction of the reform and opening policy.

    分析：原文中动词“改革开放”转译成了名词；另外，“改革开放”是一种政策，为了表达准确，我们增译出名词 policy；而这里说的“改革开放以来”其实是指“改革开放政策实施以来”，故我们又增译出了 introduction。

15. **译文：**After the banquet, the concerts and the table tennis exhibitions, he would work on the drafting of the report.

    分析：原文表达的是“在一系列活动之后”，并不强调动作行为，故我们将“参加”“出席”“观看”这几个动词都省去不译。

星期三　句子翻译技巧

一、主干的确定

汉语注重“意合”，英语注重“形合”，因此汉语的句子结构经常比较松散，而英语句子往往严格遵循“主语＋谓语”的主干结构。因此，在汉译英时，不管汉语句子复杂与否，我们首先都要结合英语的特点考虑英语句子的基本主干结构，然后再去考虑时态和定语、状语等成分。

确立英语句子主干的核心在于主语的选择，汉译英时，如果完全按照汉语

的主语来确定译文的主语，很多时候可能会显得逻辑不通或生硬晦涩。选择主语、确立主干时要注意以下几点：

1. 主谓的合理搭配

英语句子的主语和谓语要求具有合理的逻辑关系，确定主干时，要考虑谓语的动作是否能由主语来实施，谓语是否能合理描述主语的特征。

例：汉语：现在世界各地都在学习中国功夫。

译文：Nowadays, Chinese *kung fu* is being learned all across the world.

分析："世界各地"不能"学习功夫"，翻译时如果直接按照汉语的主谓去译，就造成了英语的主谓逻辑混乱。我们可以像译文中一样译成被动语态，也可以维持原文的主动语态，增译出主语 people。

2. 句子主题的突出

确定英语句子主干时，要考虑句子陈述的主题是什么，译文应突出句子主题，不能一味地按照汉语的主谓结构来直译。

例：汉语：十二生肖代表动物的性格特点各不相同。

译文：The twelve symbolic animals have their own characteristics.

分析：按照原文的结构，主语应该是"性格特点"，但句子陈述的主题其实是"12 个动物有不同的性格特点"，陈述对象应该是"动物"而不是"特点"，因此我们在译文中将 animals 而不是 characteristics 作为主语，既突出了陈述的主题，又避免了句子结构的失衡。

3. 句子结构的平衡

英语句子一般要避免头重脚轻，有时候严格按照汉语的结构进行翻译，会出现句子结构失衡的情况，此时可以根据实际情况选择适合英语表达习惯的主谓结构，也可以采取形式主语、被动语态等来达到句子结构的平衡。

例：汉语：那些曾经向我们学习过的人现在已经超过了我们，这对我们确实是一个挑战。

译文：It was a real challenge that those who have learned from us now excelled us.

分析：如果严格按照汉语的语序结构进行翻译，主语就会显得过长，所以我们将前一个句子译成主语从句，置于句末，用 it 来充当形式主语。

二、顺译或逆译

顾名思义，顺译就是按照汉语原文的顺序进行翻译的方法，逆译就是打破汉语原文的语序、按照英文的表达习惯进行翻译的方法。

1. 顺译

有些汉语句子结构与英语表达方式一致，在翻译时就可以按照原文顺序来译，这种方法多用于单一主语的句子，且句子结构一般比较简单。

例：汉语：四合院是中国的一种传统合院式住宅，如今已经成为观光景点。

译文：The quadrangle is a traditional courtyard residence in China, and has now become a tourist attraction.

分析：原文两个并列句的主谓结构均比较简单，与英文表达方式基本一致，故直接顺译即可。

2. 逆译

更多的时候，我们在翻译时需要根据英语表达习惯来适当调整语序。这种语序的调整主要涉及两种类型：

1）定语、状语等个别成分顺序的调整

汉语中定语一般都放在中心词之前，而英语中如果是单个单词做定语，则放在中心词前，如果是较长的短语或句子做定语，则放在中心词之后。

汉语中的状语一般都是放在被修饰成分之前，而英语中状语位置则比较灵活，翻译时要酌情处理状语的位置。

例：汉语：中国功夫**因其悠久的历史、丰富的内涵以及浓厚的神秘色彩**而越来越受中外所瞩目。

译文：Chinese *kung fu* is drawing more and more attention at home and abroad **for its long history, rich connotation and deep mysterious color**.

分析：原因状语“因……色彩”译到句末，以避免主语 Chinese *kung fu* 与谓语 is drawing more and more attention 间隔太远，更符合英文表达习惯。

2）因与果等句间语序的调整

汉语中往往是原因在前，结果在后；条件或假设在前，结论在后；先叙事或阐述细节，后表态或评论，也就是说汉语往往把重心放在后面。而英语则比较灵活，但在大多数情况下正好与汉语相反，因此我们在汉译英时要注意根据英语的表达习惯来调整句子陈述的语序。

例：汉语：站在桌边等待顾客点菜时需要容忍很多事情，这已经**不足为奇**了。

译文：**It is common** that there's a lot to put up with when waiting tables.

分析：原文先叙事，后给出评论，按照英文习惯调整语序，先做出评论，将“不足为奇”译到句首，既符合了英文的表达习惯，同时也实现了句子结构的平衡。

三、合译或分译

1. 合译

有时候汉语原文中会出现一些形散意合的短句，为了符合英文表达习惯，我们在汉译英时往往需要通过从句、非谓语动词短语等方式将汉语中的两个或多个句子合译成逻辑关系紧密的英文长句。

例 1：汉语：物质具有一定的特征，我们可以根据这些特征来识别他们。

译文：Matter has certain features or prosperities **that enable** us to recognize it easily.

分析：我们将原文的两句话进行了合译，将第二句译成了第一句的定语从句，使句子结构更加紧凑。

例 2：汉语：中国是一个发展中的海洋大国。中国高度重视海洋的开发和保护。

译文：**As a major developing country with a long coastline**, China attaches great importance to marine development and protection.

分析：我们将原文的两句话进行了合译，第一个句子通过介词 as 译成了主语的同位语。

2. 分译

有时候汉语原文中某个短语很难用单个的英文词或短语表达出来，此时可以将其译成一个句子，也就是说将汉语中的一句话拆分成两句话来译。这种情况在四、六级汉译英中虽然并不常见，但偶尔也会出现。

例 1：汉语：她的一身灰色服装简单而**合身**。

译文：Her dress was grey and plain, **but is fitted her body nicely**.

分析：原文中主要表达的两层意思，一层是“她的服装简单”，另一层是“但很合身”，所以我们将其进行了分译，将“合身”译成了一个单句。

例 2：汉语：我们**要干**就要干好。

译文：**If we do a thing,** we should do it well.

分析：“要干”在汉语中虽然只是一个简单的词，但它含有一种假设，故我们在英文中将其译成一个 if 引导的条件状语从句。

四、无主句的翻译

汉语中有很多没有主语的句子，而英语则讲究主谓结构的完整，除了祈使句和省略句以外，英语句子通常都有主语，而四级段落翻译一般都是比较正式

的语体，很少会出现祈使句和省略句。因此，我们在汉译英时，需要采用合适的方式将汉语的无主句译成主谓结构完整的英文句子。

1. 将无主句译成被动句

汉语中的无主句要么施动者未知，要么不强调施动者，但一般情况下都会有受动者或宾语，这种情况下，用英文的被动句表达往往十分合适。

例：汉语：每逢佳节庆典到处都可以看到灯笼。

译文：On festivals and celebrations，lanterns can **be seen** everywhere.

分析：汉语原文是个无主句，不强调施动者，故我们将宾语提前作为主语，译成被动句。

2. 将无主句译成存在句

英文中的存在句即 there be 句型使用也比较频繁，当汉语中的无主句含有类似这种“存在”含义的时候，往往可以处理成 there be 句型，该句型中 be 的方式比较灵活，可以是 happen to be，seem to be，occur 等形式，表达出更丰富的含义。

例：汉语：关于酒的发明有许多种说法，最著名的是杜康的传说。

译文：__There are__ many legends concerning the invention of alcohol. The popular one is about Du Kang.

分析：汉语原文是个无主句，含有存在含义，故译成 there be 句型。

3. 根据上下文为无主句增添主语

有时候，汉语无主句中宾语较长，或是含有多个宾语，这时就不太适合将其译成被动句，这时我们可以根据上下文来挖掘句子的隐含主语，将其补充出来。大多数情况下，这些无主句的主语都是 one，we，you 等表示泛指含义的代词。

例：汉语：中国古人不断告诉读书人，要想替国家做事，必须先把家庭治理好。

译文：Chinese ancients kept warning scholars that **they** should run their families well before they could work for the country.

分析：原文中后面两句都是无主语句，但是由上一句可知，此处隐含的主语都是 scholars，故增译出代词 they，代替 scholars 充当主语。

有时我们根据句子的含义转换句子的主谓结构，主语可能会是从句或是不定式短语，这种情况下我们会用 it 充当形式主语。

例：汉语：每当客人来访时，都需要泡茶给客人喝。

译文：Whenever guests visit，**it** is necessary to make and serve tea to them.

分析：原文中的后半句是个无主句，我们将其主谓结构进行了转换，译成“泡茶给客人喝是必需的”，不定式短语是真正的主语，it 充当形式主语。

五、语态的选择

在英语中，被动语态的使用远远高于汉语，英语中被动语态的使用或是为了强调受动者，或是因为没有明显的施动者。如果一味简单地按照汉语的语态来进行对译，就可能会导致译文不合逻辑，读起来十分别扭生硬。

汉语中有时候被动语态会带有明显的“被”“受”等标志，但更多的时候句中并没有标志词，而是隐含被动意义，我们在翻译时要注意识别。

例 1：汉语：目前，全世界成千上万人练习太极拳，主要是由于它对于人类健康的神奇作用。

译文：**Tai Chi is practiced** by thousands of people around the world mostly because of its miraculous effects on human's health.

分析：原文用的是主动语态，但本句主要陈述的是“太极拳”的普及和神奇作用，因此我们将“太极拳”译为主语，将原文的主动语态转译成被动语态。

例 2：汉语：在古代，人们用中国结来记录事件，但现在主要用于装饰的目的。

译文：In ancient times, the Chinese knot **was used** to record events, but now it **is used** mainly for decorative purposes.

分析：原文用的是主动语态，但主语“人们”其实是泛指概念，此处主要陈述的是中国结的用途，在英语中当不强调施动者的时候，更习惯于用被动语态。

六、“使”字句和“让”字句的译法

碰到“使”字句和“让”字句，很多学生会很自然地将其译为 make… 和 let…，而其实这在很多情况下并不符合英文表达习惯，而是带有浓厚的中式英语味道。所以我们在碰到“使”字句或“让”字句的时候，尽量不要使用 make…和 let… 结构，而是要根据句子的具体含义选择更加地道的方式来表达。

1. 译成被动语态

汉语中的“使”或“让”（尤其是“让”）经常暗含着被动意义，我们在汉译英时可以将其译成被动语态。

例：汉语：尊重别人，才能**让**别人尊重。

译文：If you respect others, you will **be respected** by others.

分析：原文中的“让别人尊重”含有“被别人尊重”之意，故可译为被动语态。

2. 采用具有“使动”意义的动词或其他及物动词

英语中除了 make，let 以外，还有很多具有“使动”意义的词，比如 enable，allow，permit 等，我们要学会根据具体情况灵活选用。此外，有很多及物动词本身就含有“使某人……”或“让某人……”之意，不需要再用 make sb… 或 let sb… 的结构来表达，比如 convince“使某人信服”，surprise“让某人吃惊”，因此，我们在遇到“使”字句或“让”字句的时候，要注意根据“使”或“让”之后的内容选择更地道准确的词语表达。

例：汉语：教育的目的不只是**让**学生掌握必要的知识，更应该提高学生的整体素质。

译文：Education should aim not only to **enable** students to master basic knowledge，but to improve their overall quality.

分析：原文中“让学生掌握知识”含有“使学生能够……”之意，故可译成 enable sb. to do sth. 结构。

3. 将“使”或“让”通过逻辑关系体现出来

有时候“使”或“让”体现了前后的一种逻辑关系，我们可以通过在译文中增加关联词或其他方式将这种逻辑关系表现出来。

例：汉语：近几年来香港购物旅游热，**使**香港成为世界上旅游业发展最快的城市之一。

译文：With the craze for shopping and touring in Hong Kong，the city has become one of the fastest developing tourist destinations in the world.

分析：原文中的“使”字表示前后的一种原因和结果的关系，我们将前一部分译成 with 介词短语，将这种因果关系体现出来。

七、专题演练

1. **汉语：**应该采纳新规则的建议是主席提出的。
   译文：_____
2. **汉语：**必须立即采取有效措施消灭沙尘暴。
   译文：_____
3. **汉语：**他刚上车，就发现忘了带钱包了，这令他十分恼火。
   译文：_____
4. **汉语：**中国是个大国，百分之八十的人口从事农业，但耕地只占土地面积的十分之一。
   译文：_____
5. **汉语：**在那个地区进行了一次关于新生儿死亡率的调查，调查结果令人吃惊。

译文： _____

6. **汉语：**直到所有的证据摆在他面前他才承认他的罪行。

   译文： _____

7. **汉语：**春节是中国最重要的古老节日之一。春节象征着团结、兴旺以及对未来寄予的希望。

   译文： _____

8. **汉语：**赛龙舟是端午节的一项重要活动，在中国南方尤为流行。

   译文： _____

9. **汉语：**通常，若是用茶杯泡的茶，在茶喝完一半之后就应该加开水。

   译文： _____

10. **汉语：**京剧脸谱（Peking Opera facial makeup）是广大戏曲爱好者非常喜爱的一门艺术，国内外都很流行，被大家公认为是中国传统文化的标志之一。

    译文： _____

11. **汉语：**早在战国时期就已经出现了杂技的雏形（embryonic form）。

    译文： _____

12. **汉语：**五四爱国运动于 1919 年 5 月 4 日在北京发生。中国工人阶级作为政治舞台上的一支力量首次被唤醒。

    译文： _____

13. **汉语：**西湖位于杭州市中心的西部，它是江南三大名湖之一。

    译文： _____

14. **汉语：**中国人过春节或其他节日，饺子是必不可少的。

    译文： _____

15. **汉语：**筷子的出现使我们的祖先不再用于抓食物吃，因此它象征着文明的到来。

    译文： _____

参考答案

1. **译文：**The suggestion that the new rule be adopted came from the chairman.

   分析：“采纳新规则”应该是“建议”的同位语，该部分是一个无主句（没有动作的发出者），因此应翻译成英语中的被动句。需要注意的是像 suggestion，order，demand 等表示建议、命令、要求等含义的名词后面接同位语从句时，从句的谓语动词用 should do 的形式，should 常省略。

2. **译文：**Effective measures must be taken immediately to eliminate sandy storms.

   分析：汉语的无主句通常翻译成英语的被动语态。

3. **译文：**It annoyed him that no sooner had he got on the bus than he found he forgot to take the wallet with him.

分析：如果严格按照汉语语序进行翻译，就会造成头重脚轻，故我们将前面部分译成主语从句，置于句末，而用 it 代替其充当形式主语。no sooner… than 和 hardly(scarcely)… when 都表示“刚一……就……”，注意其中连词的区别。该句型有两个特点：一是主句中一般使用过去完成时，而从句中一般使用一般过去时；二是 no sooner 或 hardly(scarcely)位于句首时，紧跟其后的句子应采用部分倒装。

4. **译文**：China is a large country with eighty percent of the population engaged in agriculture, but only one tenth of the land is farmland.

   分析：本句使用了合译，将“百分之八十的人口从事农业”译成了 with 独立主格结构，充当前一句的状语。另外，“耕地只占土地面积的十分之一”进行了逆译，以实现与前一句结构的对称。

5. **译文**：A survey was carried out on the death rate of new-born babies in that region, the results of which were surprising.

   分析：汉语原文的第一句是个无主句，我们将其译成被动语态。后一句是说明前一句调查的结果，故可以将两句进行合译，将后一句译成非限制性定语从句，由 which 引导，代替 survey 在从句中做 of 的宾语。

6. **译文**：Not until he was showed all evidence did he confess his crime. / It was not until he was showed all evidence that he confessed his crime.

   分析：原文为主动语态，但如果直译成 all evidence was before him 会显得十分生硬别扭，不符合英文表达习惯，故我们将其转换成被动语态。not… until 意为“直到……时，才……”，为了起到强调作用，经常将 not until 提前构成倒装。另外，该句型还常用于强调句型。

7. **译文**：In China, the Spring Festival is one of the most significant ancient festivals, which symbolizes unity, prosperity and new hopes for the future.

   分析：原文中两个句子衔接紧密，主语一致，故我们可以将其进行合译，第二句译成 which 引导的非限制性定语从句。

8. **译文**：Dragon boat racing is an important activity of Duanwu Festival, and is particularly popular in the south of China.

   分析：原文中的前置定语“端午节的”按照英文习惯译成介词短语做后置定语，状语“在中国南方”也按照英文习惯放到句末。

9. **译文**：Usually, if the tea is made in a teacup, boiling water should be added into the cup when half of the tea in it has been consumed.

   分析：原文都是无主句，不强调施动者，按照英语习惯都译成了被动语态。

10. **译文**：As one of the favorite arts of the traditional opera lovers at home and abroad, Peking Opera facial makeup has been regarded as one of the symbols of Chinese traditional culture.

    分析：为了句子表达简洁和结构严谨，我们将原文中几个句子进行了合译。

首句译成 as 引出的介词短语做状语，第二句中的“国内外”直接合并到 as 介词短语中充当状语，“都很流行”的意思已经在前面体现出来，故略去不译。

11. **译文：**As early as the Warring States Periods, there appeared embryonic form of acrobatics.

    分析：原文是一个无主句，含有“存在”之意，故我们将其译成 there be 句型，为了表现出“出现”之意，这里的 be 换成了 appear。

12. **译文：**The patriotic May 4th Movement took place on May 4th, 1919 in Peking. For the first time, the Chinese working class was awakened as an independent force on the political stage.

    分析：时间状语“首次”按英文习惯译到了句首；“作为……力量”译成介词短语 as… 做状语，置于句末。

13. **译文：**The West Lake, located in the western area of Hangzhou's center, is one of the top three lakes in the regions south of the Yangtze River.

    分析：我们将两句合译为一句，第一句译成过去分词短语做后置定语。

14. **译文：**Jiaozi is absolutely necessary when the Chinese people celebrate the Spring Festival and other festivals.

    分析：英语习惯把重心放在前面，先做出评判，再阐述细节，故我们在翻译时将时间状语从句译到了后面。

15. **译文：**Thanks to the invention of chopsticks, our ancestors no longer grabbed food to eat, so chopsticks are the signal of civilization.

    分析：此处的“使”含有因果关系，故我们通过 thanks to 将这种因果关系体现出来。

星期四　高频语法扫雷

一、5 种基本句型

英语句子的基本结构可以归纳成 5 种基本句型及其扩大、组合、省略或倒装，掌握这 5 种基本句型，是掌握各种英语句子结构的基础，也是提高翻译和写作能力的基础。

下笔翻译前，应首先确定英文句子的基本句型框架，确定句子主干，然后再确定定语、状语等句子成分。翻译时一定要厘清句子结构，搞清所译的各项内容在句中充当什么成分，分析各成分之间的修饰关系，以确保译出结构正确、表达地道的英文句子。

1. 主语（S）+谓语（不及物动词 V）

该句型中的谓语动词要用不及物动词或相当于不及物动词的动词短语，后面不需要宾语，但可以跟副词、介词短语、状语从句等做句子的状语。

如：**He died** three years ago.

When I invited her to play with us，**she didn't take part**.

2. 主语（S）+谓语（及物动词 V）+宾语（O）

该句型中的谓语动词需要用及物动词或相当于及物动词的短语，后面必须要跟宾语，即动作的承受者。

如：**We** should **take good care of the old**.

He is using the pen that I bought for him yesterday.

3. 主语（S）+系动词（V）+表语（P）

该句型也可以称为主系表结构，侧重说明主语是什么或怎么样，表语是表示主语身份、状态的形容词、名词、介词短语、不定式或分词等。

系动词常分为以下五类：① 判断类：be，prove 等；② 持续类：keep，remain，stay，lie，stand 等；③ 表象类：seem，appear，look 等；④ 感官类：feel，look，smell，sound，taste 等；⑤ 变化类：become，grow，turn，fall，get，go 等。

如：Though I called him several times，**he remains still**.

They are short of money.

4. 主语（S）+谓语（及物动词 V）+间接宾语（IO）+直接宾语（DO）

该句型中的谓语动词比较特殊，必须跟两个宾语，即指物的直接宾语和指人的间接宾语，句子意思才能表达完整，有时候直接宾语也可以是从句。

如：**She gave me a story book** that I hope for a long time.

Please **fetch me some water**.

通常情况下双宾语的结构是间接宾语在前，直接宾语在后；如果直接宾语在前，间接宾语在后，间接宾语前需要用介词 to 或 for。

如：My mother **bought me three novels**.

My mother **bought three novels for me**.

5. 主语（S）+谓语（及物动词 V）+宾语（O）+宾语补足语（OC）

该句型中的谓语动词虽然是及物动词，只跟一个宾语还不能表达完整的意思，所以必须加上一个补充成分即宾语补足语来说明宾语，才能使句子意思完整。宾语补足语是用来补充说明宾语的情况的，能做宾语补足语成分的有：名词、形容词、副词、介词短语、不定式、现在分词、过去分词等。

如：**Keep the door open** please.

I found him seated there all the day.

二、名词性从句

名词性从句就是在句中起名词作用的从句，根据其在句中语法功能的不同，可分为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。

当主语、宾语、表语较复杂时，我们可将其译成名词性从句，名词性从句的引导词主要包括引从属连词 that，whether，if（只起连接作用）；连接代词 who（ever），whom（ever），what（ever），which（ever），whose（在句中充当主语、宾语或定语）；连接副词 when，where，why，how（在句中充当状语）。使用名词性从句时主要注意以下几点：

1. It 充当形式主语或形式宾语

英语句子讲究结构的平衡，一般要避免头重脚轻，因此我们经常需要使用 it 代充当形式主语或宾语，而将主语从句或宾语从句置于句末。

如：**It** goes without saying **that** in order to speak good English，we must first of all learn good pronunciation. 不言而喻，为了讲好英语，首先必须学好发音。

2. that 和 what

that 引导名词性从句时，只起连接作用，不充当成分；what 引导名词性从句时，既起连接作用，又要在从句中充当成分（主语、宾语或表语），表示“……的”之意，且 what 引导的名词性从句，一般不用 it 做形式主语或形式宾语。

如：**That** they are good at English is known to us all. 他们擅长英语我们都知道。（that 引导主语从句，不充当任何成分）

What some people regard as drawback is seen as a plus by many others. 一些人眼中的不利因素在许多其他人看来却是有利因素。（what 引导主语从句，在从句中做宾语）

3. what 和 whatever

whatever/ whoever/ whichever/ however 表示“无论什么/……”，注意它们与 what/ who/ which/ how 在含义上的区别。另外，whatever 等词引导的名词性从句，也不能用 it 做形式主语或形式宾语。

如：The how-to book can be of help to **whoever** wants to do the job. 无论谁想做这份工作，这个手册都会有所帮助。

It is not decided **who** does the job. 谁来做这份工作还没有决定。

4. whether 和 if

if 和 whether 表示“是否”，引导宾语从句时可以互换，但下列情况下一般只能用 whether：

whether 可以做介词宾语，if 不能。如：It depends on **whether** they will come back. 这取决于他们是否会回来。

whether 可以与 or not 连用，if 不能。如：I don't know **whether or not** he had known the news. 我不知道他是否已经知道了那个消息。

whether 可以与 or 连用表示一种选择，if 不能。如：Anyone，**whether** men **or** women，the young or the old，may buy lottery tickets. 任何人，无论男女老少，都可以买彩票。

whether 可以与不定式连用，if 不能。如：There are two problems for you to consider in deciding **whether** to move. 要决定是否搬家，有两个问题你要考虑。

whether 可以引导主语从句和表语从句，if 不能。如：**Whether** the meeting will be put off has not been decided yet. 会议是否被推迟还没有决定。

鉴于 whether 使用的广泛性，我们在翻译时如需表示“是否”之意，应尽量使用 whether。

5. 区分同位语从句和定语从句

同位语从句是对先行词起补充和解释作用，多由 that 引导，that 没有实际意义，在从句中不充当任何成分。定语从句是对先行词起修饰和限定作用，引导词要在从句中充当一定的成分。

如：The news that our team won the game made me excited. （同位语从句，that 不做成分）

The news that they told me made me exited. （定语从句，that 充当宾语）

例 1：汉语：开始看起来模糊不清的事情再看一次可能就会变得清晰并有逻辑。

译文：What seems confusing at first might well become clear and organic a second time.

分析：“开始看起来模糊不清的事情”是陈述的主体，what 引导的主语从句常用来表示“……的事情”，what 在从句中充当主语。

例 2：汉语：两本书中没有一本持这种观点：核战争的危险正在加剧。

译文：Neither of the two books holds the opinion that the danger of nuclear war is increasing.

分析：冒号后面是解释“观点”的内容，故译成 that 引导同位语从句。

三、定语从句

定语从句相当于形容词，其作用是做定语修饰主句中的某个名词性成分，汉译英时使用定语从句要注意以下几点：

1. 确定先行词和关系词

使用定语从句，我们要抓住两个最关键的词：先行词和关系词。先行词是被修饰的中心词，它在主句中，但它又要在定语从句中充当成分，我们要根据其性质和形式以及其在从句中充当的成分来判断使用什么样的关系词去代替它。

2. 只能用 that 当关系代词的情况

① 当先行词是 all，everything，anything，nothing，none，few，some，little 等不定代词，或当先行词被 every，any，all，no，little，few，much 等修饰时。如：In spite of all **that** has been said，quite a lot of people are still uncertain about the prices of housing in China. 尽管已经说了很多，但很多人对于中国的房价仍然不确定。

② 当先行词被序数词、形容词最高级、the very/ the only 等修饰时。如：Nowadays，when people talk about magicians，the first one **that** comes into their mind is Liu Qian. 现在，当人们谈论到魔术师的时候，第一个想起的魔术师就是刘谦。

③ 当先行词既指人又指物时。如：The famous scientist said it was his primary school teachers and their lessons **that** he was fond of that influenced his whole life. 那位著名的科学家说，正是那些他喜欢的小学老师及他们所教授的知识影响了他的一生。

3. 只能用 which 当关系代词的情况

① 引导非限制性定语从句时。如：After graduating from college，I took some time off to go travelling，**which** turned out to be a wise decision. 大学毕业以后，我花了一些时间去旅行，事实证明那是明智的决定。

② 关系代词前有介词时。如：Gun control is a subject **about which** Americans have argued for a long time. 枪支控制是美国人争论已久的话题。

4. as 和 which 在引导定语从句时的区别

as 和 which 引导定语从句，先行词可以是一个词，也可以是主句整个句子。as 有“正如，正像”之意，引导的定语从句可以出现在句首、句中或句尾。which 没有具体含义，引导的定语从句不能放在句首。

如：**As** is mentioned above，the number of the students in senior high school is increasing. 正如上面提到的，高中生的人数正在增长。

The number of the students in senior high school is increasing rapidly，**which** is a challenge to the local education department. 高中生的人数正在快速增长，这对当地的教育部门是个挑战。

5. whose 的用法

whose 在定语从句做定语，可指人（的），也可以指物（的），指物（的）

时可以用 of which 代替。如：The prize will go to the writer **whose** story shows the most imagination. 得奖的将是故事最具想象力的作家。

6. 其他特殊用法

① 先行词是 the way，常用 that/ in which 来引导定语从句，也经常将关系词省略。如：We are not purely selfish creatures in the way **that** Hobbes had thought. 我们并不是像霍布斯描述的那样是绝对自私的生物。

② 一些表示抽象空间概念的名词如 atmosphere（气氛），case（情况），situation（形势），position（位置），stage（舞台），point（地步）等做先行词时，一般用关系副词 where 引导定语从句。如：The Olympics are like a huge stage **where** everyone makes every effort to achieve their dreams. 奥运会就像是一个大舞台，每个人都在这个舞台上为实现梦想而竭尽全力。

③ 先行词是表示时间、地点或原因的名词，但其在定语从句中不是做状语，而是做主语或宾语，此时定语从句要用关系代词引导，而不用关系副词。如：I will never forget those days **that/ which** we spent together. 我永远也不会忘记我们一起度过的那些日子。

例 1：汉语：这个男人被留在一个孤岛上，他在那里待了半年之久。

译文：The man was left on an isolated island, where he stayed for as long as half a year.

分析：先行词 island 为地点名词，故其定语从句应该用关系副词 where 来引导。表示“长达……之久”，可用“as long as + 时间”的结构。

例 2：汉语：一些路被洪水淹了，这使我们的旅程更为艰难。

译文：Some of the roads were flooded, which made our journey more difficult.

分析：分析句子结构可知，汉语部分应该是一个非限制性定语从句，引导非限制性定语从句，代替前面整个句子应该用关系代词 which。注意从句中的谓语动词应该用过去式，保持时态一致。

四、状语从句

当前后两个句子之间存在某种从属性的逻辑关系时，为了体现出这种逻辑关系，我们在汉译英时要用到状语从句。使用状语从句的关键就是搞清上下文之间的逻辑关系，选用恰当的逻辑关系词。

逻辑关系词本身词义并不复杂，也没有词形变化，它的语法功能就是在词与词、短语与短语或句子与句子之间起连接作用，按照一定的逻辑关系使前后两部分连成一体。因此，只要按照逻辑关系将连词进行分类记忆即可。

常见的引导状语从句的逻辑关系词：

逻辑关系	常用连接词语
时间	when，whenever，as，since，till，until，before，after，the moment/day/instant/minute/second，every time，no sooner… than，hardly… when
地点	where，wherever，anywhere
比较	(not) as… as，not so… as，(not) such… as，(not) the same as，than，while
条件	if，unless，as/so long as，on condition that
原因	because，since，as，now that，seeing that，considering that，in that，for
结果	so that，so… that，such… that
目的	in case，for fear that，lest，so that，in order that
方式	as，just as，as if，as though
让步	though，although，even if/though，as，while，whatever，wherever，whoever，however，no matter what/ how/…，whether… or

下面是几组容易混淆的逻辑关系词：

1. 表示原因的连词：since，as，for

since 常意为“既然”，表示已知、显而易见的原因，语气比 because 稍弱。引导的从句一般置于句首。如：**Since** food is crucial to health，a good chef is always trying to seek balance among cereals，meat and vegetables. 由于食物对健康至关重要，好的厨师总是努力在谷物、肉类和蔬菜之间取得平衡。

as 引导的原因状语从句主要是对主句进行附带说明，一般位于句首，语气较 because 要弱。如：**As** I had a cold，I was absent from school. 因为我感冒了，所以没去上课。

for 是对主句的意思加以补充，引导的从句不能位于句首，并且要用逗号与主句断开。如：It must have rained，**for** the ground is wet.

2. 表示时间的连词：before，since，until

before 引导的时间状语从句表示主句动作发生在从句动作之前，前面常与一段时间连用，并常译为“在……之后才”。如：Several days had gone **before** I knew my watch was lost. 几天以后我才发现我的表丢了。

since 常用于“It is/ has been + 一段时间 + since…”句式中，表示“自从……以来已经多长时间”。如：It is two years **since** we came here. 自从我来这儿已经两年了。

until 引导时间状语从句主要有两种情况：① 主句是肯定句，谓语为延续性动词，表示主句谓语动作一直持续到从句谓语动作发生时为止，意为“直到”，

如：I waited for him **until** he finished his class。我一直等到他上完课。② 主句是否定句，谓语为短暂性动词，表示主句谓语动作直到从句谓语动作发生时才开始，意为“直到……才”，如：He didn't go to bed **until** his father came back. 直到他父亲回来他才上床睡觉。

3. 表示让步的连词：whatever，no matter what，as

whatever，however 等既可引导让步状语从句，还能引导名词性从句；no matter what，no matter how 等只能引导让步状语从句。

如：**Whatever/ No matter what** you do，you must do it well. 无论你做什么，都必须要做好。

You must do **whatever** the boss requires. 老板要求什么，你就得做什么。（此处不能用 no matter what）

as 引导让步状语从句时，需使用倒装。如：**Child as he is**，he knows a lot. 尽管他还是个孩子，但他知道很多。

4. 表示条件的连词：unless，so/as long as，in case

unless 相当于 if… not，意为“除非，如果……不”。如：You'll fail the exam **unless** you study hard. 如果你不努力学习，你考试就不会通过。

so/as long as 意为“只要”。如：**As long as** she did this，all would be well. 只要她这么做，一切都会好起来。

in case 意为“万一”。如：**In case** I forget，please remind me of my promise. 万一我忘了，请提醒我我所做出的承诺。

5. 表示结果的连词：so… that…，such… that…

so 为副词，修饰的是形容词或副词；such 为形容词，修饰的是名词。注意 so 和 such 后面所接的不同的结构：

① so + 形容词/副词 + that 从句。如：The town is so beautiful that it attracts lots of tourists every year. 这个小镇如此美丽以至于每年都会吸引很多游客的到来。

② so + 形容词 + a/an + 可数名词单数 + that 从句，必须有形容词修饰，才能用 so，要注意冠词的位置。如：It is so beautiful a town that it attracts lots of tourists every year. 这是如此美丽的一个小镇以至于每年都会吸引很多游客的到来。

③ such + a/an + （形容词 + ）可数名词单数 + that 从句，此处也可以没有形容词修饰，要注意冠词的位置。如：It is such a beautiful town that it attracts lots of tourists every year. 这是如此美丽的一个小镇以至于每年都会吸引很多游客的到来。

④ so + many/ much/ few/ little + 名词 + that 从句，当名词前有 many/ much 等数量词修饰时，只能用 so，不能用 such。如：There are so many scenic spots in the town that lots of tourists visit it every year. 这个小镇上有如此多的名胜以至于每年有很多游客前来参观。

⑤ such +（形容词 +）可数名词复数/ 不可数名词 + that 从句，后面是复数名词或不可数名词时，不管前面有没有形容词修饰，都只能用 such。如：There are such beautiful scenic spots in the town that lots of tourists visit it every year. 这个小镇上有如此多的美丽的景点以至于每年有很多游客前来参观。

例 1：汉语：无论多么频繁地演奏，贝多芬的作品总是会吸引大批的听众。

译文：No matter how frequently performed, the works of Beethoven always attract large audiences.

分析：no matter 经常与疑问词连用，引导让步状语从句，表示“无论……”；本句中 frequently“频繁”是一个副词，修饰动词 perform，故应该用疑问词 how 来修饰副词 frequently；而 the works 与 perform 之间是被动的关系，故状语从句应该采用被动语态。而且，由于从句主语与主句主语一致，因此可将 they are 省略，直接用过去分词 performed 做状语。另外，no matter how frequently 也可以用 however frequently 来替换。

例 2：汉语：单独一个人在荒芜的房子里，他如此忙于研究工作以至于感觉不到孤单。

译文：Alone in a deserted house, he was so busy with his research work that he didn't feel lonely.

分析：so… that… 意为“如此……以至于……”，that 引导结果状语从句。由主句的时态可知 that 从句也应该采用一般过去时。

五、非谓语动词

非谓语动词包括不定式、分词和动名词，考生在复习时首先要了解这几种非谓语动词的基本用法。一般来说，不定式常表示目的或将要发生，过去分词常表示完成和被动，现在分词常表示进行和主动，动名词则相当于名词的作用，常做宾语或主语。

非谓语动词的基本语法功能及基本形式如下：

非谓语动词	基本语法功能	基本形式
不定式	主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、宾语补足语	一般式：to do/ to be done 进行式：to be doing 完成式：to have done/ to have been done
动名词	主语、宾语、表语、定语	一般式：doing/ being done 完成式：having done/ having been done
现在分词、过去分词	表语、定语、状语、宾语补足语	现在分词基本形式同动名词 过去分词只有一般式 done

考生在使用非谓语动词时，应注意以下几点：

1. 非谓语动词同其所修饰的名词或逻辑主语的一致关系

根据非谓语动词与其逻辑主语的关系来确定使用主动语态还是被动语态，从而确定是采用现在分词还是过去分词。

如：After **being interviewed** for the job, **you** will be required to take a language test. 面试以后，你被要求参加一项语言测试。(interview 与其逻辑主语 you 之间是被动关系)

2. 非谓语动词同主句谓语动词动作发生的先后关系

动作正在进行的用现在分词进行式，同时发生或不分先后发生的用现在分词一般式或过去分词；在主句谓语动词之前发生的用现在分词完成式、不定式完成式；发生在主句谓语动词之后的多用不定式一般式。

如：The man confessed to **having told** a lie to the judge. 那个人承认之前对法官说了谎。(动名词的完成式表示动作发生在主句动作之前)

3. 动名词的复合结构

动名词的复合结构是由形容词性物主代词或名词的 's 所有格加上动名词构成。

如：All his friends suggest **his quitting** that job as early as possible. 他所有的朋友都建议他尽早辞掉那份工作。

4. 独立主格结构

非谓语动词做状语时，其逻辑主语应与句子主语一致，即句子主语就是非谓语动词所表示动作的发出者或承受者。但有时候非谓语动词的逻辑主语并不是句子主语，而是带有自己的逻辑主语，即构成“名词/代词 + 非谓语动词”的独立结构。独立主格结构一般要用逗号与主句隔开，而且经常会由介词 with 引出。

如：With his glasses broken, the man couldn't see the road clearly. (动作已经结束)

With some books to buy, he went into the bookstore on his way home. (动作没有发生)

5. 不定式的完成式表示“原计划或打算要做的事而没做”

下列动词后常接不定式的完成式 to have done 结构，表示“原计划要做的事而没做”：claim, desire, mean, promise, hope, plan, wish, expect, intend, pretend 等。

如：He **planed to have gone** fishing but he suddenly had an important meeting to attend. 他本来计划去钓鱼的，结果他突然有个会议要参加。

6. 一些只能接动名词或不定式做宾语的动词

只能接动名词、不能接不定式做宾语的动词主要有：abandon，admit，advocate，allow，appreciate，avoid，bear，complete，consider，delay，deny，deserve，dislike，enjoy，escape，fancy，favor，finish，forgive，imagine，keep，mind，miss，postpone，prevent，practice，quit，recommend，resist，risk，suggest 等。

如：That young man still **denied having started** the fire behind the store. 那个年轻人仍然否认他在商店后面放了火。

只能接不定式、不能接动名词的动词主要有：agree，afford，arrange，appear，attempt，choose，claim，decide，expect，fail，hope，plan，prepare，offer，pretend，promise，tend，intend，happen，determine 等。

如：He **pretended not to see** me as he passed me in the street. 他从我身边走过去的时候，假装没有看到我。

7. 既可接动名词又可接不定式的动词

有些动词既可接不定式也可接动名词，二者的区别主要分为两种情况：一是接动名词强调动作正在进行或当时的状态，接不定式强调过程，如 see，watch，hear 等；二是接动名词表示动作已经发生，接不定式表示动作还没发生，如 remember，forget，regret，stop，try 等。

如：We **regret to inform** you that the books you ordered are out of stock. 我们很遗憾地通知你，你订的书现在缺货。

He **regretted not going** to the meeting last week. 他很后悔上周没去参加那个会议。

例 1：汉语：看到他的朋友在遭受病痛的折磨，他感到非常难过。

译文：Watching his friend suffering the illness, he felt very sad.

分析："看到……"的逻辑主语和后面句子的主语一致，故可译成现在分词短语做状语，即 watching…；watch 后面既可以接动名词做宾补，也可以接不定式做宾补，动名词强调动作和当时的状态，不定式则强调过程和结果。此处是表示正在遭受痛苦，强调当时的状态，故应该用动名词 suffering。

例 2：汉语：新政府被指控没能实现其降低失业率的承诺。

译文：The new government was accused of failure to fulfill its promise to reduce the unemployment rate.

分析：本句中"降低失业率的"应该是充当"承诺"的定语，可以用不定式短语充当后置定语来表达。

六、时态

英语中一共有 16 个时态，考生在复习时要注意各个时态的主要用法，翻译时要注意抓住句子中的时间状语，判断其是表示现在、将来还是过去？是短暂时间还是延续性时间？从而确定译文的时态。

1. 一般过去时和现在完成时

区分关键：一般过去时表示的事情就是发生在过去，与现在情况没有联系，常与确定的过去时间状语连用。现在完成时则强调过去的动作在现在产生的结果或对现在的影响，或是动作从过去某个时间开始，一直延续到现在，不与表示过去的时间状语连用。

如：He served in the army from 1965 to 1968.（过去服过兵役）

He has served in the army for 5 years.（从 5 年前开始服兵役，到现在还是现役军人）

2. 一般过去时和过去完成时

区分关键：一般过去时和过去完成时虽然都是发生在过去，但是两种时态的时间参照点不同，一般过去时是对现在说话的时刻而言；过去完成时则是对过去某一时刻而言，是“过去的过去”，有过去的时间参照点，常与“by + 过去的时间”或“before + 过去的时间”连用。

如：He wrote many plays when he was at college.（单纯讲过去上大学时候的事）

He had written many plays by the time he graduated from college.（大学毕业是过去的时间点，写了许多剧本是到过去某一时刻的结果）

3. 现在完成时与过去完成时

区分关键：两种时态都常与表示一段时间的状语连用，现在完成时表示的是延续到现在的动作或状态，句中不可以有表示过去特定时间的状语；过去完成时表示的是过去某时之前已经完成或延续到过去某时的动作，句中常有表示过去特定时间的状语。

如：He has been ill for a week.（到现在，他已经病了一个星期）

He had been ill for a week by the time he came here.（到他来这儿之前，他已经病了一个星期）

4. 现在完成时与现在完成进行时

区别关键：现在完成进行时强调过去发生、开始的动作持续到现在，并且还在进行。现在完成进行时不能与表示次数的状语连用，而现在完成时则可以

连用。

如：I have been writing the essay.（表示一直在写，暗示没有写完，还要写下去）

I have written the essay.（表示论文已经写完了）

5. 注意一些惯用句式的时态

①“It will（not）be + 一段时间 + before 从句”句式中，从句中的谓语动词用一般现在时。肯定时意为“要过多久才……”，否定时意为“过不了多久就……”。如：It will be quite a long time before we find the way out.

②“It was（not） + 一段时间 + before 从句”句式中，从句中的谓语动词用一般过去时。如：It was several days before we got the news.

③“It is/has been + 一段时间 + since 从句”句式中，从句中的谓语动词用一般过去时。如：It's been six years since we last saw each other.

④“It was/had been + 一段时间 + since 从句”句式中，从句中的谓语动词用持续性动词的过去完成时。如：It was three years since Jack had been a teacher.

⑤“This/It is + the first/ second/… time + that…”句式中，that 后的从句用现在完成时。如：This is the first time that I have visited this city.

⑥“It/ This/ That was + the first/ second/… time + that…”句式中，that 后的从句用过去完成时。如：It was the second time that he had made the same mistake.

⑦“hardly/ scarcely… when…”和“no sooner… than…”句式中，主句用过去完成时，从句用一般过去时，常用倒装结构。如：Hardly had the sports meeting started when it started to rain.

⑧ hope，expect，think，intend，want，suppose 等用于过去完成时，表示未实现的愿望、打算或意图，意为“原本……”。如：We had expected that you would be able to win the match.

例 1：汉语：科学家一致认为我们还需要很长时间才可以找到治愈癌症的方法。

译文：Scientists agree that it will be a long time before we find a cure for cancer.

分析：表示“还需要很长时间才……”习惯于用句式“It will be + 一段时间 + before…”表达。主句用一般将来时，从句用一般现在时。

例 2：汉语：一项全面的科学普查表明，地球气候正在明显变暖。

译文：A broad scientific census says that the earth is experiencing significant global warming.

分析：所给汉语部分中的“正在”提示此处应用进行时态，且主句中使用的是一般现在时，所以从句的时态应是现在进行时。

七、专题演练

1. **汉语**：除非政府提供更多的资金，否则医院就得关门。
   译文：_____
2. **汉语**：仔细调查发现多达百分之五十的病人没有按指示服药。
   译文：_____
3. **汉语**：据说艾滋病在过去十年中已经对当地妇女构成了最大的健康威胁。
   译文：_____
4. **汉语**：玛丽每次违反交通规则的时候都想逃脱惩罚。
   译文：_____
5. **汉语**：英国人不是很熟悉其他文化和做事方式，这种情况经常在别的国家也存在。
   译文：_____
6. **汉语**：要想帮助朋友解决困扰他的问题，一个人应该具备所需要的知识。
   译文：_____
7. **汉语**：古埃及据推测已向月球发射过火箭。
   译文：_____
8. **汉语**：只有那些不怕困难的人，才有可能在工作中取得杰出的成绩。
   译文：_____
9. **汉语**：压岁钱是长辈们送给孩子的护身符（amulet），代表着长辈对孩子的美好祝福。
   译文：_____
10. **汉语**：近年来，重阳节（the Double Nine Festival）被赋予了新的含义，逐渐成为开展各种敬老活动、一年一度的“老年节”。
    译文：_____
11. **汉语**：从汉朝开始，荡秋千逐渐成为一种在清明节（the Tomb-sweeping Day）和其他一些节日时进行的民间活动。
    译文：_____
12. **汉语**：孔子品格中的优点，几千年来影响着中国人，特别是影响着中国的知识分子。
    译文：_____
13. **汉语**：十世纪初，北京成为辽代的第二个都城。从那时起，北京先后成为金、元、明、清四朝的首都，直至1911年。
    译文：_____
14. **汉语**：由于春节标志着新的一年的开始，人们选择吃饺子来表达他们对新年的美好祝愿。
    译文：_____

15. **汉语**：我们一直在研究一种新药，其药力强大到足以改变大脑化合物的组成。

译文：_____

参考答案

1. **译文**：Unless the government agrees to provide extra money, the hospital will have to close.

   分析：unless 表示“除非……否则”，相当于“if… not”，常用于引导条件状语从句。

2. **译文**：Careful surveys have indicated that as many as 50 percent of patients do not take drugs as (they are) directed.

   分析：表示“按指示”可以用 as 引导方式状语从句，从句的主语与前面句子的主语一致，故我们可以将其简化成分词形式。

3. **译文**：AIDS is said to have been the greatest healthy challenge to the local women in the past decade.

   分析：主语为 AIDS，表示“据说……”用被动结构 be said to do sth.，根据后面的时间状语 in the past decade 可知，此处所表达的动作是发生在过去，故应该用不定式的完成式来表达。

4. **译文**：Mary often attempts to escape being fined whenever she breaks traffic regulations.

   分析：所给汉语部分的“每当……时候”，也含有“不论何时”之意，所以此处的时间状语从句的连词最好用 whenever。

5. 译文：The British are not so familiar with different cultures and other ways of doing things, as is often the case in other countries.

   分析：后半句可以译成 as 引导的非限制性定语从句，as 代替前面整个句子，在从句中充当主语，表示后面的情况也跟前面的一样。我们可以把 as is often the case 当作固定句型来记。

6. 译文：To help a friend solve the problem troubling him, a man should be equipped with the kind of knowledge required.

   分析：不定式短语常用在句首表示目的，表示“帮助某人做某事”一般用 help sb. (to) do sth. 的结构。

7. **译文**：The ancient Egyptians **are supposed to have sent rockets** to the moon.

   分析：表示“据推测……”，常用短语 be supposed to；其次，“已发射过火箭”这一动作是发生在过去，明显是在谓语动词“are supposed”的动作之前，故应该用不定式的完成式来表达。

8. **译文**：Only those who are not afraid of any difficulties have the chance of achieving outstanding results in their work.

分析：代指“那些人”，直接用“those”即可，后面无需再加 people；关系代词 who 引导的定语从句，修饰 those，who 在从句中充当主语。

9. **译文**：Lucy money is an amulet the elders give their kids, representing the elders' fine wishes for the kids.

   分析：原文中后一句是对前一句的进一步说明，为了句子表达的简洁和结构的紧凑，我们可以将后一句译为现在分词短语做状语。

10. **译文**：In recent years, a new meaning has been given to the Double Nine Festival, and it gradually becomes an annual Seniors' Day, on which various activities are held in honor of senior people.

    分析：“开展各种活动”“一年一度”都是“老年节”的定语，为了避免定语太长，我们将“开展各种敬老活动”译成非限制性定语从句，由 which 引导，因为活动是“在节日那一天”开展，故用 on which。

11. **译文**：Since the Han Dynasty, swinging has gradually become a folk activity performed on the Tomb-sweeping Day and some other festivals.

    分析：since 表示“自……起”，与现在完成时连用。“在……时进行的”是“民间活动”的定语，译成现在分词短语做后置定语。

12. **译文**：The shining points in Confucius' characteristics have been influencing the Chinese people, especially the Chinese intellectuals for thousands of years.

    分析：“几千年来”译成 for thousands of years，表示“几千年来至今一直持续”用现在完成进行时。

13. **译文**：At the beginning of 10th century, Beijing became the second capital of the Liao Dynasty. From then on, Beijing had been the capital of the Jin, Yuan, Ming and Qing Dynasties until 1911.

    分析：“十世纪初”是过去的时间点，故第一句用了一般过去时。第二句描述的是“从过去的某个时间开始一直到过去的某个时间为止”的情况，故用过去完成时。

14. **译文**：As the Spring Festival marks the start of a new year, people choose to eat jiaozi to express their best wishes for the New Year.

    分析：此处的原因并不是直接的因果关系，主要是对主句的附加说明，故不用 because 来表达，而用 as。as 引出的原因，没有 because 强烈，且常位于句首。

15. **译文**：Our research has focused on a drug which is so powerful as to be able to change brain chemistry.

    分析：“强大到足以……”可用 so… as to…“如此……以至于……”结构表达。

星期五　高分句式突破

一、it 做形式主语或形式宾语

为了使句子结构更加清晰对称，经常会用 it 代替不定式、动名词短语或从句在句中充当形式主语，而将真正的主语置于句子后面。当动名词或不定式充当动词宾语时，后面又跟有宾语补足语时，须用 it 充当形式宾语，而将真正的宾语（动名词或不定式）置于宾补之后。

关于 it 做形式主语的用法，有很多常见的句式：

1. It is done that…

It is believed that… 据认为……，人们相信……

It is considered that… 有人认为……

It is reported that… 据报道……

It is said that… 据说……

It is supposed that… 据推测……

It is told that… 据传……

It is well known that… 众所周知……

It is estimated that… 据估计……

It was pointed out that… 有人指出……

It is generally accepted that… 人们通常认为……，一般认为……，大家公认……

It is alleged that… 人们断言……

It is claimed that… 有人主张……，人们要求……

It cannot be denied that… 不可否认

It has been found that… 实践证明

It is predicted that… 据估计……，据预测……

It is suggested that… 有人建议……

2. It is + *adj.* + (of/ for sb.) to do sth. / that…

该句型中，it 为形式主语，真正的主语为后面的不定式或 that 从句。如：It is very impolite to speak very loudly in public. 在公共场合大声说话是很不礼貌的。

当形容词为sb. 本身具有的性质、特点时，用 of，像 kind，nice，clever，foolish 等；当形容词是表示事物的性质时，则用 for，像 difficult，impossible，

interesting 等。

如：It's silly of you to ask such questions. 你提出这样的问题，实在是太傻了。(表示“你真傻”)

It is necessary for us to sleep well. 睡眠好对我们来说是必需的。(表示“睡眠是必需的”)

3. It is necessary/ important/ advisable/… that…

与表示重要性、必要性、公平性等含义的形容词相连的名词性从句一般要采用虚拟语气，其谓语动词用 should do 的形式，should 常省略。常见的这类词语包括：important，necessary，essential，unfair，advisable，appropriate，desirable，imperative，impossible，incredible，obligatory，proper，vital，urgent 等。如：It is **imperative** that these safety rules **be obeyed** by everyone. 这些安全规则必须被所有人遵守。

4. It turns out to be/ that…

It turns out to be/ that… 表示“结果是……，原来是……”，强调一种出乎意料的结果，后面可以接 to be…，也可以接 that 从句。

如：**It turned out to be** one of his old friends. 原来是他的一个老朋友。

It turned out that his brother paid the debt for him. 原来是他弟弟帮他还了债。

5. It goes without saying that…

It goes without saying that… 表示“不言而喻，……”如：**It goes without saying that** in order to speak good English，we must first of all learn good pronunciation. 不言而喻，为了讲好英语，首先必须学好发音。

6. It appears/ seems that…

It appears/ seems that… 表示“看来似乎……，好像……”，如：In fact，**it seems that** nearly every poet or philosopher in history has tried to define love. 事实上，似乎历史上几乎每一位诗人或哲学家都曾试图诠释爱。

例 1：汉语：如今，人们经常会看到年轻的女性不再遵守女性语言规范。

译文：Nowadays，it is commonly observed that young women are not conforming to the feminine linguistic ideal.

分析：本句按照英文习惯译成了被动语态，使用了形式主语 it。

例 2：汉语：乔治从机场给他的老板打电话，但接电话的却是他的助手。

译文：George called his boss from the airport but it turned out that his assistant answered the call.

分析：“却是”表明“结果出乎意料”，故可用 it turns out that… 句式表达。

二、强调句型

强调句型的基本结构是：It is/ was + 强调部分 + that/ who + 其他部分。汉译英时要注意根据所给汉语意思判断需要强调的部分，以及句子应该采用何种时态。如：**It is** because of the driver's carelessness **that** the car accident happened. 是因为司机的粗心才发生了车祸。

除了 it was… that… 强调句型之外，在动词之前加上 do/does/did 也能起到强调作用。如：Many people think that physical exercise **does contribute** directly to a person's health. 许多人认为体育锻炼**的确**直接有助于身体健康。

区分 it 做形式主语/宾语和 it 用于强调句型：

it 常代替主语从句或宾语从句充当句子的形式主语，当从句由 that 引导时，结构就跟强调句型很像，容易混淆。区分的办法是将句子 It is/was…that…中的 that 去掉，如果句子还成立，那么本句是强调句型，如不成立，即是 it 做形式主语/宾语。如：

It is a pity **that** I missed the party.（去掉后，a pity I missed the party 不是一个完整的句子，本句不是强调句型）

It is because of the accident **that** I missed the party.（去掉后，because of the accident I missed the party 句子成立，则本句是强调句）

例 1：汉语：在中国五千年的历史上，对华夏民族的性格、气质产生最大影响的人就算是孔子了。

译文：During 5,000 years' history of China，**it is Confucius who** has exerted the greatest impact on Chinese nation's characteristic and temperament.

分析：汉语原文中“就算是”提示，此处强调的是主语“孔子”，故我们将其译成强调句型。

例 2：汉语：直到失去的时候，人们才知道健康的价值。

译文：It is not until they lose it that people know the value of health.

分析：表示“直到……才”用 not… until 句型，从汉语意思上来看，此处是要强调时间状语，故我们可以用强调句型来表达。当强调 until 引导的时间状语时，要将 not 和 until… 一起放到被强调的位置。

三、比较句式

汉译英中常涉及的比较句式和短语有：as… as 同级比较结构；Nothing is more … than（没什么比……更）；Just as…（正如，正像）；no more/less（…）than（不过，仅仅），more… than（与其……不如），compared with（和……相比），

in contrast to（与……形成对比）等。如：Since my childhood I have found that nothing is **more** attractive to me **than** reading. 童年时起我就发现没有什么比读书对我更有吸引力。

另外，表示“增加/上升/下降”等含义的句子，考生在翻译时也要注意，尤其要注意介词的使用。increase/decrease by 表示“增加/下降了多少”，increase/decrease to 表示“增加/下降到多少”。如：The production of the crop has **increased by** three times compared with that of last year. 和去年相比，该作物的产量已经增加了三倍。

注意下面几个比较句式的用法：

1. 表示倍数的句式

① 句型 1：……倍数词 + as + 形容词原级 + as…。如：This room is three times as big as that one.

② 句型 2：……倍数词 + the + 大小、高矮等性质名词 + of…。如：This room is three times the size of that one.

③ 句型 3：……倍数词 + 形容词比较级 + than…。如：This room is three times bigger than that one.

2. 同级比较

表示同级比较的结构主要有 as… as…, the same as… 以及 such… as… 结构。as … as… 的否定结构为 not as/so… as…。做题时一是要注意根据上下文判断出比较含义，选用恰当的同级比较搭配连接词；二是要注意搞清比较结构中间的形容词或副词在句中所充当的成分，从而选择恰当的形容词或副词。

如：Tom is a student as good as John. / Tom is as good a student as John.

Tom does not have so/as many books as I have.

3. the + 比较级……，the + 比较级

“the + 比较级……，the + 比较级”结构表示“越……，就越……”。如：The more he read, the more puzzled he felt.

使用这一句式时，可将句子还原为正常语序，搞清句子结构后再进行翻译。

4. no/ not + 比较级 + than

no more… than 意为“和……一样不”，than 前后都是否定的含义。

no less… than 意为“和……一样”，than 前后都是肯定的含义。

如：A is no more careful than B. A 和 B 都不仔细。

A is no less careful than B. A 和 B 都很仔细。

not more… than 意为“不多于，至多”。

not less… than 意为“不少于，至少”。

如：A is not more careful than B. A 不如 B 仔细。

A is not less careful than B. A 的仔细程度并不差于 B。

no more than 意为“仅仅，只不过”，后接名词或数量词。

no less than 意为“多达，竟有……之多”，相当于 as many as 或 as much as。

如：What he is saying is no more than a joke. 他说的只不过是个玩笑而已。

He won no less than 2,000 dollars in the lottery. 他买彩票中了 2 000 美元。(强调多)

例 1：汉语：我们比任何时候都坚信改革开放的政策是正确的。

译文：We are more convinced than ever that the reform and open-door policy is correct.

分析：所给汉语部分中的“比”提示，此处应用比较级来表达。

例 2：汉语：这种物质的反应速度是另外那种物质的三倍。

译文：This substance reacts three times as fast as the other one. / This substance reacts twice faster than the other one.

分析：表示倍数可以用同级比较结构，也可以用比较级结构，注意两种表达方式倍数词的不同：用同级比较，表示“是……的三倍”用 three times；用比较级结构，“是……的三倍”其实是“比……多两倍”的意思，故用 twice。

四、并列结构

英语中并列结构形式工整，表达有力。并列结构前后形式要求一致，经常由 but…，and…，either… or…，not only… but also，neither… nor…，not… but…，as well as，rather than 等短语连接。如: I was advised **either** to telephone **or** to write the hotel for reservations. 我得到的建议是或者打电话或者写信给该旅店订房。

例 1：汉语：赛龙舟**不仅**是一种体育和娱乐活动，它**更**能体现人们心中的集体主义和爱国主义精神。

译文：Dragon boat racing is **not only** a kind of sports and recreational activities, **but also** reflects the spirit of people's collectivism and patriotism.

分析：汉语中的并列结构“不仅……更”通过英文中的 not only… but also 连接。

例 2：汉语：故宫是中华民族的骄傲所在，**也**是全人类的珍贵文化遗产。

译文：The Palace Museum is an invaluable heritage of all human beings **as well as** the pride of the Chinese nation.

分析：汉语中的“也”通过英文短语 as well as 表达，连接并列的名词短语。

五、专题演练

1. **汉语**：据估计有超过三分之一的人口没有机会享受医疗保健服务。
   译文：_____
2. **汉语**：美国人每天摄入的蛋白质比他们实际需要的多两倍。
   译文：_____
3. **汉语**：据记载，中国人过春节已有四千多年的历史。
   译文：_____
4. **汉语**：从 2008 年起，端午节（Dragon Boat Festival）被正式列入国家法定假日，这既有助于弘扬传统文化，又能适应人们的需要。
   译文：_____
5. **汉语**：孟子（Mencius）认为人性本善，是社会的影响引发了道德的堕落。
   译文：_____
6. **汉语**：不是英雄创造了历史，而是历史创造了英雄。
   译文：_____
7. **汉语**：他们不仅闯进了他的办公室，而且撕碎了他的手稿。
   译文：_____
8. **汉语**：你的工作能力才是最重要的，而不是你来自哪里或者你是干什么的。
   译文：_____
9. **汉语**：你和他相处得越久，你就越会觉得他是一个值得信任的人。
   译文：_____
10. **汉语**：据报道该工厂今年的产量与去年相比增加了 50%。
    译文：_____
11. **汉语**：房屋和建筑的破坏范围并不像原来担心的那么广泛，各村的情况不一样。
    译文：_____
12. **汉语**：许多人没有意识到，正是这种经常性的体罚为虐待儿童打下了基础。
    译文：_____
13. **汉语**：核科学的发展应该对人类有益而不是有害。
    译文：_____
14. **汉语**：如果一家公司想要采用新的薪资结构，就必须确定一种评估工作的方法。
    译文：_____

15. **汉语**：这样看来，不仅移动互联网有前途，实际上移动互联网就是未来。
译文：_____

参考答案

1. **译文**：It is estimated that over a third of the population have no access to the health service. /Over a third of the population is estimated to have no access to the health service.
分析：表示“据估计”常用句式“It is estimated that…”。当句子不太复杂的时候，我们也可以不使用形式主语，而将 that 从句的主语提前，将从句的谓语改为不定式结构做主语补足语。
2. **译文**：Americans eat twice more protein than they actually need every day.
分析：英语中表示“比……多多少倍”常用“倍数词 + more than…”的结构。
3. **译文**：It is recorded that the custom of celebrating the Spring Festival has lasted for more than 4, 000 years.
分析：“据记载”常译为被动句式“It is recorded that…”，其中 it 为形式主语，真正的主语为 that 从句。
4. **译文**：In 2008, Dragon Boat Festival was recognized as a public holiday for the first time, which can not only help spread our traditional culture but also meet the need of people.
分析：原文中的“既……又……”为并列结构，译成 not only… but also 连接的并列谓语。
5. **译文**：Mencius believes that human nature is essentially good, and it is society's influence that causes the degradation of morality.
分析：“是……引发了……”含有强调的意思，故我们将其译成强调句型。
6. **译文**：It is not heroes that make history but history that makes heroes.
分析：“不是……而是”一般译成 not… but 连接的并列结构，此处有强调的含义，故我们将其译成强调句型。
7. **译文**：They not only broke into his office, but(also)tore up his manuscripts.
分析：not only… but(also)用于连接并列结构，意为“不但，而且”，前后时态保持一致，都使用了一般过去时。
8. **译文**：It's your ability to do the job that matters not where you come from or what you are.
分析：所给汉语部分中的“才是”提示，该部分是要强调“工作能力重要”，所以应用强调句型来表达。

9. **译文：**The longer you have got along with him, the more you will find him a reliable man.

   分析：“the more…, the more…”表示“越……，就越……”，注意“the + 比较级”要位于两个分句的句首，具体用哪一个形容词或副词的比较级要根据句子的具体结构和含义而定。

10. **译文：**It is reported that the factory's output of this year increased by 50% compared with that of last year.

    分析：表示“据报道”常用句式“It is reported that…”。表示“增加了多少”用 increase by。

11. **译文：**The destruction of buildings and houses is not so widespread as was initially feared, and varies from village to village.

    分析：所给汉语部分中的“像”提示，此处应该使用比较结构 as… as… 结构来表达。需要注意的是第二个 as 后面的部分。第二个 as 后面可接名词或代词，也可接句子，接句子时，如果主从句的主语一致，从句的主语常省略。此处根据句意要求，as 后应该接从句，从句的主语与主句的主语一致，它与“担心”之间应该是被动关系，故从句应使用被动语态，而从句是表示“原来的情况”，故应该用一般过去时。另外，否定时，常用 so 来代替第一个 as。

12. **译文：**Many people do not realize that it is the regular use of physical punishment that lays the groundwork for child abuse.

    分析：“正是”提示，此处应使用强调句型，强调句子的主语“经常性的体罚”。

13. **译文：**The nuclear science should be developed to benefit the people rather than harm them.

    分析：表示“而不是”通常用 rather than，该短语用于连接并列成分，此处连接的是并列的不定式短语，一起充当主语补足语，后面的不定式符号省略。

14. **译文：**If a firm wants to adopt a new wage and salary structure, it is essential that the firm decide on a method of job evaluation.

    分析：此处的“必须”可译为“it is essential that…”句型，该句型中 that 从句习惯于使用虚拟语气，谓语动词要用 should do 的形式，should 常省略。

15. **译文：**It appears that not only does the mobile web have a future, the mobile web is the future.

    分析：“这样看来……”通过“It appears that…”句式来表达。

星期六　一周复习效果检验

Test 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

刺绣（embroidery）是一种具有悠久传统的民间艺术，在中国艺术和手工艺品史上占有重要地位。刺绣的长期发展离不开蚕（silkworm）的饲养和纺丝（spinning）技术的发展。中国是世界上第一个使用丝绸的国家。早在 5 000 年前，中国就已经开始饲养蚕。丝线和丝制品的生产促进了刺绣艺术的诞生。时至今日，丝绣几乎已经传遍整个中国。

Test 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

美国人强调效率、竞争和独创性，而中国人则将严谨规划放在首位，鼓励团队成员之间的密切合作和无私（altruistic）奉献。在美国学校，讨论享有至高无上的地位；而中国教师喜欢讲课，喜欢考试，编写千篇一律的标准教案，培养整齐划一的高材生。现在，中美联系比以往更加紧密。中国人学英语、玩保龄球、吃肯德基，美国人学汉语、练功夫、吃北京烤鸭。

Test 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

在中国，送礼通常是为了表示尊重、感恩、友谊、爱情或热情。这其实是

世界各地一种普遍的礼节（courtesy）。中国礼仪（etiquette）已有几千年的历史，代代相传。对于中国人来说，礼貌要求互惠（reciprocity），这意味着对别人彬彬有礼的人将收到别人的友善和恩惠。如果他们收到礼物、邀请或款待，他们会在适当的时机回赠别人。互惠的习俗也被认为是建立和维持友谊的传统方式。与其他国家一样，在中国，人们会在生日、婚礼或聚会时赠送合适的礼物。礼物是否昂贵、是否很大，都不重要。

Test 4

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

皮影戏（shadow play）也叫灯影戏（light shadow play），是中国最古老的戏剧之一。演员们伴随音乐歌唱，同时控制皮影。这些戏的内容以传统历史剧和寓言故事居多。皮影戏融合了戏剧、音乐和绘画的一些特点，是文学写作、工匠雕刻和绘画以及民间歌唱的融合体。它使人愉快、内容丰富、雅俗共赏，且具有丰富的文化内涵和艺术源泉。皮影戏是世界文化和艺术节的瑰宝。

Test 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

同一种动物在东西方不同的文化背景下所表达的含义不尽相同。在西方人眼里，蝙蝠就是一个邪恶、丑陋的吸血鬼（bloodsucker）。但是在我国南方，蝙蝠是好运、健康、财富、幸福的象征。西方人认为孔雀不时开屏来炫耀其美丽，这是“骄傲”“虚荣”的表现。而中国人认为孔雀开屏是喜庆吉祥的象征，所以人们常用孔雀比喻美丽的人或事物。

Test 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

汉语是中国汉族使用的语言。汉语历史悠久，在3 000多年前就有了相当成熟的文字。汉语有超过12亿的使用者，是使用人数最多的语言之一。除了中国，新加坡、马来西亚等国也有相当一部分人使用汉语，分布在世界各地的几千万华侨、华裔，也以汉语的各种方言为自己的母语。汉语是中国人使用的主要语言，也是联合国的工作语言。

Test 7

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国是世界上最大的国家之一，她的领土约和整个欧洲的面积相等。在我们这片广大的领土上，广阔的肥田沃地是我们衣食之源；纵横全国的大小山脉生长着茂密的森林，贮藏着丰富的矿产（mineral deposits）；众多的江河湖泽给我们以舟楫和灌溉之利；而漫长的海岸线为我们与海外各民族交往提供方便。自古以来，我们的祖先就在这片广大的土地之上劳动、生活和繁衍。

Test 8

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国人的生活多姿多彩，有许多很有意思的民俗（folkways）。最有意思的可能要数中式婚礼了。中国人结婚与西方人不大一样，西方人要进教堂，而中国人要大摆筵席；西方人要上帝赐福，而中国人要拜天地、拜父母；西方人穿着洁白的婚纱举行婚礼，而中国传统的婚礼需要新郎新娘穿红衣服，因为红色在中国象征着吉利、喜庆。

参考答案

Test 1

① 刺绣是一种具有悠久传统的民间艺术，在中国艺术和手工艺品史上占有重要地位。② 刺绣的长期发展离不开蚕的饲养和纺丝技术的发展。③ 中国是世界上第一个使用丝绸的国家。④ 早在 5 000 年前，中国就已经开始饲养蚕。⑤ 丝线和丝制品的生产促进了刺绣艺术的诞生。⑥ 时至今日，丝绣几乎已经传遍整个中国。	① Embroidery, a folk art with a long tradition, occupies an important position in the history of Chinese arts and crafts. ② Its long-run development is inseparable from silkworm-raising and the development of spinning technology. ③ China is the first country in the world that uses silk. ④ Silkworms were raised in China as early as 5 000 years ago. ⑤ The production of silk threads and fabrics gave rise to the art of embroidery. ⑥ Today, silk embroidery is practiced nearly all over China.

主题：中国传统文化——刺绣

难点及词汇注释：

句① 包含两个独立的句子，但是在英语中，可将“一种具有悠久传统的民间艺术”翻译为主语“刺绣”的同位语，这样使句子结构更加简洁，也更为地道。“占有重要地位”可译为“occupy an important position”。

句②“长期发展”可译为“long-run development”；“离不开……”可译为“be inseparable from…”。

句④“早在……”可译为“as early as…”。

句⑤“促进了……的诞生”可译为“give rise to…”。

Test 2

① 美国人强调效率、竞争和独创性，而中国人则将严谨规划放在首位，鼓励团队成员之间的密切合作和无私奉献。② 在美国学校，讨论享有至高无上的地位；而中国教师喜欢讲课，喜欢考试，编写千篇一律的标准教案，培养整齐划一的高材生。③ 现在，中美联系比以往更加紧密。④ 中国人学英语、玩保龄球、吃肯德基，美国人学汉语、练功夫、吃北京烤鸭。	① American people emphasize efficiency, competition and originality while Chinese people give priority to careful planning and encourage close cooperation and altruistic dedication among team members. ② In American schools, discussion is given top priority while Chinese teachers like to lecture in class, and are obsessed with examinations. ③ They write common standardized teaching plans, and thus bring up identical and standardized talents. ④ Nowadays, the relations between China and America becomes closer than ever. ⑤ Chinese learn English, play bowling, enjoy KFC, while Americans learn Chinese, exercise *Kung Fu* and they like Peking Duck.

主题：中西文化差异——中美差异及交流

难点及词汇注释：

句① “而”提示，前后两句话之间存在对比，翻译时可用 while 引导比较状语从句；为了使句子表达更加多样化，可将“强调”和“将……放在首位”翻译成不同表达方法，如 emphasize 和 give priority to…。

句② 过长，可适当拆分为两个句子，如“编写千篇一律的……”可作为单独句子来翻译。“而”提示，前后两句话之间存在对比，可采取句① 的处理方法。“享有至高无上的地位”可译为“be given top priority”。“千篇一律的”可译为“consistent”；“整齐划一的”可译为“identical and standardized”。

句④ 中虽然没有明显的转折词，但从语义上来看，“中国人……”与“美国人……”之间存在对比，同样可用 while 引导比较状语从句。

Test 3

① 在中国，送礼通常是为了表示尊重、感恩、友谊、爱情或热情。② 这其实是世界各地一种普遍的礼节。③ 中国	① In China, gifts are usually given to show respect, gratitude, friendship, love or hospitality. ② It is actually a common courtesy in the world. ③ With a history of

礼仪已有几千年的历史，代代相传。④ 对于中国人来说，礼貌要求互惠，这意味着对别人彬彬有礼的人将收到别人的友善和恩惠。⑤ 如果他们收到礼物、邀请或款待，他们会在适当的时机回赠别人。⑥ 互惠的习俗也被认为是建立和维持友谊的传统方式。⑦ 与其他国家一样，在中国，人们会在生日、婚礼或聚会时赠送合适的礼物。⑧ 礼物是否昂贵、是否很大，都不重要。	thousands of years, Chinese etiquette has formed and been passed down from generation to generation. ④ For Chinese people, courtesy demands reciprocity, which means people who are well-mannered to others will receive kindness and favors. ⑤ If they receive a gift, an invitation or hospitality treatment from someone, they will offer back to the one when it is suitable. ⑥ The custom of reciprocity is also considered a traditional way to build and maintain friendship. ⑦ For birthdays, weddings or parties, giving suitable gifts in China is just as any other countries will do. ⑧ It does not matter whether your gift is expensive and big or not.

主题：中国传统文化——送礼

难点及词汇注释：

句①“送礼……”虽然可以译为“giving gifts…”，但却不够简洁、地道，可灵活变通，将其译为“gifts are given to…”。

句③“已有几千年的历史”在翻译时，可将其处理为状语 with a history of…，使句子结构更加简洁。“代代相传”可译为“pass down from generation to generation”。

句④“这意味着……”是对前一句的解释说明，可将其译为 which 引导的非限制性定语从句，该从句的主干结构为“……人将收到别人的友善和恩惠”，所以“彬彬有礼的”可以处理为 who 引导的定语从句，修饰“人”。“对……彬彬有礼的”可译为“be well-mannered to…”。

句⑥“……的方式”可译为“a way to…”。

句⑦“与……一样”可译为 as 引导的方式状语从句。

句⑧“不重要”的主语是“礼物是否……”，为句子，所以应用 it 做形式主语，whether 引导的从句做真正的主语。“……不重要”可译为“… not matter”。

Test 4

① 皮影戏也叫灯影戏，是中国最古老的戏剧之一。② 演员们伴随音乐歌唱，同时控制皮	① Shadow play, also called light shadow play, is one of the oldest operas in China. ② Actors sing along with the music while

影。③ 这些戏的内容以传统历史剧和寓言故事居多。④ 皮影戏融合了戏剧、音乐和绘画的一些特点，是文学写作、工匠雕刻和绘画以及民间歌唱的融合体。⑤ 它使人愉快、内容丰富、雅俗共赏，且具有丰富的文化内涵和艺术源泉。⑥ 皮影戏是世界文化和艺术节的瑰宝。	controlling shadow tools. ③ The contents of those plays are more about traditional historical drama and fable stories. ④ Shadow play combines some characters of drama, music and paintings, and is an integration of literary writing, handicraftsmen's carving and painting, and folk singing. ⑤ It's delightful, abundant, suiting both refined and popular tastes, and contains rich cultural connotation and art resources. ⑥ Shadow play is a treasure in the world culture and art festivals.

主题：中国传统文化——皮影戏

难点及词汇注释：

句①“也叫灯影戏”是对“皮影戏”的说明，为了简化句子结构，可将其译为过去分词短语“also called…”。

句②“……同时……”表明“歌唱”和“控制”两个动作同时发生，可用while来引导。“伴随音乐歌唱”可译为“sing along with the music”。

句④ 该句的主干成分为“皮影戏融合了一些特点”，“戏剧、音乐和绘画”为修饰“特点”的定语，可译为“characters of…”。“是……的融合体”可译为“be an integration of…”。

句⑤“且”连接并列的分句，可译为“and”。“雅俗共赏”可译为“suiting both refined and popular tastes”。

句⑥“瑰宝”可译为“treasure”。

Test 5

① 同一种动物在东西方不同的文化背景下所表达的含义不尽相同。② 在西方人眼里，蝙蝠就是一个邪恶、丑陋的吸血鬼。③ 但是在我国南方，蝙蝠是好运、健康、财富、幸福的象征。④ 西方人认为孔雀不时开屏来炫耀其美丽，这是“骄傲”“虚荣”的表现。⑤ 而中国人认为孔雀开屏是喜庆吉祥的象征，所以人们常用孔雀比喻美丽的人或事物。	① The same animal in different culture backgrounds between the East and the West respectively expresses different meanings. ② To the West, bats are evil, ugly bloodsucker; but in southern China, bats are symbols of fortune, health, wealth and happiness. ③ Westerners generally believe that it is a sign of pride and vanity for the peacock to show off its beautiful tail. ④ In contrast, Chinese think it symbolizes joy and luck and therefore people often compare the peacock to beautiful persons or things.

主题：中西文化差异——对动物的不同解读

难点及词汇注释：

句① 本句的主干结构为“同一种动物表达不同的含义”，翻译时抓住这一条主线即可。“在东西方不同的文化背景下”是指“东西方的文化背景不同”，应译为状语。翻译时根据语序进行组合即可。

句② ③ 之间存在转折关系，可用 but 连接成一个句子。“……的象征”可译为“the symbol of…”。

句④“孔雀开屏”可译为“the peacock shows off its beautiful tail”。

句⑤ 与上一句表达相反的含义，为了体现两句之间的对比，可增译“in contrast”。“用……比喻……”可译为“compare… to…”。

Test 6

① 汉语是中国汉族使用的语言。② 汉语历史悠久，在3 000多年前就有了相当成熟的文字。③ 汉语有超过12亿的使用者，是使用人数最多的语言之一。④ 除了中国，新加坡、马来西亚等国也有相当一部分人使用汉语，分布在世界各地的几千万华侨、华裔，也以汉语的各种方言为自己的母语。⑤ 汉语是中国人使用的主要语言，也是联合国的工作语言。	① The Chinese language is used by the Han people in China. ② It has a long history and had established a fairly mature written language more than 3, 000 years ago. ③ The Chinese language has more than 1. 2 billion users and can be regarded as the one spoken by the greatest number of persons. ④ In addition to China, some people in Singapore and Malaysia also use Chinese, and millions of overseas Chinese and foreign citizens of Chinese origin distributed around the world use various Chinese dialects as native language. ⑤ The Chinese language is the main language used by Chinese, also one of the working languages of the United Nations.

主题：中国传统文化——汉语

难点及词汇注释：

句②“汉语”与句① 重复，在翻译时可用 it 代替。

句③ 包含两个句子，可译为 and 连接的并列句。注意“使用语言”中的“使用”在翻译成英语时，应注意不要用“use”，而应译为“speak”。

句④“华裔”是指“有中国血统的外国人”，可译为“foreign citizens of Chinese origin”。“分布在世界各地的”可译为过去分词短语 distributed around the world，做后置定语，修饰“华侨、华裔”。

句⑤“工作语言”可译为“working language”。

Test 7

① 中国是世界上最大的国家之一，她的领土约和整个欧洲的面积相等。② 在我们这片广大的领土上，广阔的肥田沃地是我们衣食之源；纵横全国的大小山脉生长着茂密的森林，贮藏着丰富的矿产；众多的江河湖泽给我们以舟楫和灌溉之利；而漫长的海岸线为我们与海外各民族交往提供方便。③ 自古以来，我们的祖先就在这片广大的土地之上劳动、生活和繁衍。	① As one of the largest countries in the world, China has a territory that is about the size of the whole of Europe. ② In this vast country, there are large areas of fertile land which provide us with food and clothing; mountain ranges across the whole country with extensive forests and rich mineral deposits; many rivers and lakes which provide us with water transport and irrigation, and a long coastline which facilitates communications with nations beyond the seas. ③ From ancient times our forefathers have labored, lived and multiplied on this vast territory.

主题：中国传统文化——中国

难点及词汇注释：

句①“中国是世界上最大的国家之一”可译为状语 as one of the… ；“和……面积相等”可译为 about the size of…。

句② 可译为 there be 句型，其中真正的主语是并列的成分“肥田沃地”“大小山脉”“江河湖泽”“海岸线”，可用分号连接。“给我们以舟楫和灌溉之利”中的“舟楫”是指“水运”，可译为 water transport。“为……提供方便”可译为“facilitate…”。

句③“繁衍”可译为“multiplied”。

Test 8

① 中国人的生活多姿多彩，有许多很有意思的民俗。② 最有意思的可能要数中式婚礼了。③ 中国人结婚与西方人不大一样，西方人要进教堂，而中国人要大摆筵席；西方人要上帝赐福，而中国人要拜天地、拜父母；西方人穿着洁白的婚纱举行婚礼，而中国传统的婚礼	① The Chinese life is colorful with many interesting folkways. ② The Chinese wedding may be a focus of interest. ③ There are many differences between the Chinese and the West in weddings, as the people in the West go to church while the Chinese celebrate with a feast. ④ Westerners hope that God will bless them while the Chinese thank the Heaven and their parents. ⑤ Westerners wear white wed-

需要新郎新娘穿红衣服，因为红色在中国象征着吉利、喜庆。	ding dresses while the bride and groom wear in red according to Chinese tradition, because red symbolizes good luck and happiness.

主题：中西文化差异——中西婚礼习俗差异

难点及词汇注释：

句① 虽然包含两个句子，但为了使表达更加灵活，可将后一句译为状语“with many interesting folkways”。

句② “最有意思的”可译为“one of the most interesting”，也可以译为“a focus of interest”，使表达更加多样化。

句③ “西方人要进教堂……”是对前一句的解释说明，可将其译为 as 引导的原因状语从句。“而”提示该从句中包含两个存在对比含义的句子，应用 while 引导。为了使结构清晰明了，可将“西方人要上帝……”和“西方人穿着洁白的婚纱……”译为独立的句子，用 while 引导比较状语从句。“拜天地”可译为“thank the Heaven”。

第二周

预测翻译热点，进行实战演练

一、热点演练 40 篇

热点演练 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

七八千年前的新石器时代，黄河流域（the Yellow River Basin）的居民开始制作陶器。在明清两代，瓷器生产达到了顶峰。在这两个朝代中，几乎整个瓷器业都集中在江西省景德镇。明朝，瓷器被大量运往中东和近东地区。在清末，政局动荡不可避免地对艺术造成了影响，所以中国瓷器的质量开始下降。但是现在，随着中国文化在国内外越来越受到认可，瓷器生产得到复兴。

热点演练 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

京剧（Peking Opera）是中国式戏剧的一种，兴起于 19 世纪中期，到清朝达到全盛时期。它被看成是中国文化艺术的瑰宝。独树一帜的京剧艺术根植于博大精深的中华文化。但是现在京剧并不受普通大众喜爱，亟须抢救、保护和继承。当前的关键在于增强民族文化的自觉意识，建立民族文化自信，开掘京剧文化的现代价值，为优化人类文明提供精神营养。

热点演练 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国是龙狮运动的发源地。舞龙、舞狮一直深受各族人民的喜爱。它们长盛不衰，并由此形成了灿烂的龙狮文化。长期以来，很多青年朋友都以为龙舞、狮舞就是春节、庙会、庆典时的喜庆表演，殊不知它历经了几千年的传承演变，积淀了深厚的历史文化，是祖先留给我们的极其宝贵的文化遗产。

热点演练 4

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

泥塑（clay sculpture）艺术是中华民间艺术的一种。民间艺人用天然的或廉价的材料，能够做出精美小巧的工艺品，博得民众的喜爱。虽然泥塑并非以科技含量而论，但它确实在人们的生活中增加了新的亮点。在高科技迅猛发展的今天，这种艺术形式是人们追求其返璞归真的具体写照，同时也是当今人们追求时尚、个性的一种体现。

热点演练 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

造纸术是中国古代四大发明之一。在造纸术发明以前，中国人把字刻在或写在一些用起来非常笨重或昂贵的东西上，比如龟甲（tortoise shells）和绢帛上。直到东汉时期，名叫蔡伦的官员发明了既适于书写又非常便宜的纸张。之

后，造纸术经由丝绸之路向东亚、西亚以及世界其他地区传播。纸的发明极大地方便了信息的储存和交流，对于推动世界文明的发展具有重大意义。

热点演练 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

扇子在中国有三四千年的悠久历史。一开始，扇子并不是用于降温，而是用来为外出视察的帝王遮阳和挡沙。经过几千年的发展，扇子有了几百种，比如常见的有折扇、羽毛扇、绢扇等等。在历史上，中国生产的扇子被卖到日本、欧洲和美国，在这些地方中国扇对当地扇子生产和宫廷典礼产生了一定的影响。

热点演练 7

20 世纪 80 年代，自行车在中国人的日常生活中是不可或缺的，也是当时重要的交通工具，为此我国有了“自行车王国”的绰号。但近几年，中国几乎所有主要城市的自行车数量都已急剧下降。自 1995 年到 2005 年，中国自行车大军缩减了 35%，从 6.7 亿减至 4.35 亿。自行车持有量从每户 1.9 辆减至每户 1.1 辆。导致这一变化的部分原因可能是电动自行车数量的增长。

热点演练 8

中国在全国范围内开启了“食品安全周”活动。该活动由 14 家单位联合组织，包括国务院食品安全委员会办公室、农业部和教育部。10 天内将在全国举办大约 70 项活动，以呼吁大家捍卫食品安全。官方称，在此次活动中，人们可

以了解中国目前的食品安全形势，并就寻找措施和新技术来确保食品安全展开讨论。最近几年，中国面临严重的食品安全问题，涉及肉类、牛奶、水、酒等各方面的丑闻。

热点演练 9

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

家庭是社会的“基本细胞”，也是对人类社会产生重要影响的个体单位。上世纪 80 年代以来，全世界家庭数目急剧增加，家庭规模日趋缩小，离婚率普遍上升，人口老龄化问题日益严重，人们的家庭观念也在发生变化。家庭所发生的深刻变化给社会发展带来巨大冲击，需要国际社会更多关注。

热点演练 10

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

龙的文化存在于东西方世界中。但龙在中国和在西方文化中的名声不同。在西方文化中，龙是来自地狱的孽畜。它们通常长有翅膀，口中能喷火。龙深深根植在中国文化中，所以中国人经常视自己为“龙的传人”。在中国文化中，龙大度、聪慧。它们与古代皇室密切相连。根据民间信仰，如果你在龙年出生，你会成为一名睿智、勇敢的领导者。

热点演练 11

粽子是端午节（the Dragon Boat Festival）的一种传统食物，其历史可以追

溯到大约公元前300年。这一节日是为了纪念爱国主义诗人屈原的死。屈原因国家败落而投河自尽。为避免其尸体被鱼吃掉，当地人用竹叶将米包起来，扔进河里喂鱼。粽子要包得棱角分明，这代表屈原不屈的性格。屈原死后，人们划船寻找他的尸体。在他的家乡湖北秭归，端午节被看作是比春节还要盛大的节日。

热点演练 12

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

豆腐（tofu），由大豆制成，是享誉世界的中国传统美食。据说豆腐起源于西汉时期。由于制作简单、价格低廉，豆腐很快成为人们喜爱的佳肴。宋明时代后，豆腐文化传播更为广泛。如今，豆腐和其衍生产品（derivative products）对中国人来说是一种普通食品，它还走出国门，在全世界都受到欢迎。豆腐——中国传统食品——由于其高蛋白、低热量，而被普遍认为是理想食品。

热点演练 13

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国人就座的方式是餐桌礼仪的一个有趣部分。你可能会感到奇怪，在中国文化中，一个典型的座位安排其实就是礼仪的象征。因此，为了安全起见，应该把餐桌上最好的位置留给长辈。如果餐桌是矩形的（rectangular），那么长辈就会坐在桌边最短的一侧，面朝前门。其他人则会按照年龄按降序顺序就座。但是如果餐桌是圆的，长辈则应该坐在里面的座位。

热点演练 14

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国烹饪文化又被称作中国饮食文化，是中国文化中有关烹饪和休闲的重要组成部分。中国烹饪文化就和中国的历史一样神秘莫测。中国的美食也因为长期向世界其他地区广泛传播而享誉全球。世界各国著名的唐人街也首先因其中国美食服务而为人所知。现在，中国美食在世界各个角落都能轻松找到，也成为一种令人印象深刻的和有影响力的中国文化的象征。

热点演练 15

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

元宵节的起源必定跟古代人们使用火来庆祝节日、躲避灾难有关。元宵节活动包括祭祀神明（deity），且是在晚上庆祝，所以很自然地，火就扮演了很重要的角色。随着时间的流逝，元宵节逐渐演变为今天的形式。东汉时期，佛教传入中国，皇帝下令，在正月第一个满月的晚上，必须点亮灯笼敬佛（Buddha），这也使元宵节更增添了一份意义。

热点演练 16

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

不可否认，在整个中国历史中，孝心一直是中国文化的主要奠基石，植根

于中国人民的内心中。但是，在当今社会中，由于激烈竞争，许多人不管自愿还是被迫，往往会将更多的精力和时间用在创业以及攀爬社会经济阶梯上。然而，人们应该努力在家庭和工作中保持平衡。如果一个人有意愿，那么即使不能定期，但经常探望和照顾父母也是可能实现的事。

热点演练 17

中国首次购车者的平均年龄正在下降，而随着年轻一代越来越囊中羞涩(cash strapped wallet)，许多年轻人准备购买更小型的汽车。全球汽车制造商们注意到了这一趋势，在正在进行的上海汽车展上很多商家展出了小型汽车。一项在线调查表明，30%已经拥有汽车的人计划下一次会购买更小型的汽车，而大约40%的人表示想要购买小型车作为他们的第一辆车。中国自从2006年起就对购买小型车提出了激励措施，但小型车目前仍只占中国市场份额的10%。

热点演练 18

春节是中国阴历中最重要的节日。每年这个时候，外出务工的人们都会离开工作的工厂和城市返回家乡。在此期间，多数大城市的商店会关门，街道上空空荡荡，这种现象证明了外来务工者对城市经济所起到的重要作用。以往，外出务工的人们会在拼命买到火车票后，挤火车返回家乡。今年中国预计会有1.45亿人乘坐火车，而5年前这一数字只有1.05亿。此外，今年还有2400万人会乘坐飞机返乡。

热点演练 19

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

筷子好用还是刀叉好用？这是几个世纪以来东方和西方一直有争议的一个话题。而现在从环保角度出发，这场旷日持久的辩论似乎终于可以尘埃落定了。如今中国每年要砍掉 2000 万棵成熟树木，来满足人们使用一次性筷子的习惯。而中国的森林里如今已经没有足够的木材来供应这样的需求。中国现在是世界上最大的木材进口国，甚至还需要从美国进口筷子。

热点演练 20

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

启动更多的国际交流项目，把中国大学生送去国外参加文化和教育交流是大势所趋。这是中国国际化的一部分。随着全球经济一体化的发展，大学生需要意识到具备全球化视角的重要性。越来越多国际交流项目使得国内大学生有机会去体验异国文化，尽管许多学生不得不离开各自的“舒适区”，但这种经历却十分令人难忘。与此同时，中国也从日益频繁的思想、知识和文化交流中获益匪浅。

热点演练 21

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

谈到中国美食时，不能不说说筷子，因为筷子是吃饭的重要工具。随着文明意识的发展，筷子在 3000 多年前就诞生了。所以筷子也被西方人称为是“东方文明”。如今，筷子不仅仅是吃饭工具。根据国外研究来看，筷子还能帮助人们在进食时锻炼肌肉，开发大脑。同时，筷子还有不同的材质，并以精美的设计进行装饰，因此也被看作一种艺术品，常常当作礼物来赠送。

热点演练 22

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国的高等教育正面临着一个困境，夹在职业教育与学术教育之间进退两难。为了实现工业与科技高速腾飞的理想，我国现如今对于受教育工人的需求量很大。与此同时，教育模式却仍停留在传统，甚至是有些过时的水平。这意味着，大学毕业生们在一个看重职业技能的就业市场里苦苦挣扎。

热点演练 23

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

梦反映出人类内心世界，以及潜意识和意识之间的联系。在人类文明史上，梦始终被人们视为一个谜。梦文化是中国古代文化的重要组成部分。古人认为梦可以预示吉兆（auspice）和厄运。古人常常参照《周公解梦》（*Duke of Zhou Interprets Dreams*）一书来解读梦境。由于梦的意义不相同，人们可以通过解梦来得知吉凶祸福的预兆。在某种程度上，它是科学合理的。

热点演练 24

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

“睡眠证书”（sleeping certificate）——这是中国年轻白领新造的一个新词，是指一个人经过短期的培训所考取的证书，而这些证书在职场中到底能发挥多大作用却是一个未知数（dubious）。一些专家认为有必要“唤醒”这些证书并

利用其增加求职机会。但也有人认为，这些证书未必对职业发展有帮助，因为很多持有证书的人都缺乏相关工作经验，而这些经验才是应聘单位更为看重的。

热点演练 25

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国人喜欢在一起吃饭，这个传统可以追溯到很久之前。这反映出中国人喜欢团圆、不愿分离的观念——圆桌、圆盘、圆碗都象征着团圆和美满。盘子通常放在桌子的中央，这样坐在桌子面前的所有人都可以吃得到。一锅热汤尤其可以增加和谐、团圆的气氛。最近一位美国汉学家（sinologist）的著作认为，中国人的集体观念（collective tradition）就是从一同吃饭发展而来的。

热点演练 26

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

传统中国绘画是一门独特的艺术，无论是风格还是技巧都与世界其他艺术门类迥然不同。传统的日本绘画可能算是例外，但是不要忘了，它是深受中国文化影响的。中国人绘画采用毛笔蘸墨汁或颜料，灵巧地挥洒（wield）在纸上。画家用深、浅、浓、淡的点和线构成一幅图画。在优秀画家的手里，毛笔和墨汁不仅是绘画的工具，也是画家艺术追求的象征。

热点演练 27

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

秧歌舞（Yangko）是中国的一种传统民间舞蹈，通常在北方省份表演。秧歌舞者通常穿上多彩的表演服装，他们的表演动作有力迅速。在农历春节、元宵节等节日期间，人们一旦听到锣鼓声，不管外面天气有多冷，都会蜂拥到街上看秧歌舞表演。近年来，中国东北某些城市的老年人自发组织了秧歌队，队员常年通过跳秧歌舞来保持健康，同时他们也乐在其中。

热点演练 28

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

每逢新春佳节，吃饺子（dumpling）已经成为中国的习俗。究其原因，首先是因为饺子形如金元宝（gold ingot），人们在春节吃饺子取“招财进宝”之意；二是饺子有馅，便于人们把各种吉祥的（auspicious）东西包到馅里，以寄托人们对新的一年的祈望。人们常常将花生、枣（Chinese date）和栗子（chestnut）等包进馅里。吃到花生的人将健康长寿，吃到枣和栗子的人将早生贵子。

热点演练 29

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国人春节张贴门神（door gods）像是一项重要的风俗。门神像就是张贴在屋内屋外门上的神灵（deity）的画像。人们希望它们能驱鬼、保护家人、带来平安和吉祥。胖（chubby）娃娃的图画通常被认为是屋内的门神，意味着好运、长寿和人丁兴旺。大门的门神有几种不同的形式，最早的门神是神荼（Shen Shu）和郁垒。如今，最常见的门神是元朝时期流行起来的秦叔宝和尉迟恭（Yuchi Gong）。

热点演练 30

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

汉字（Chinese characters）是世界上最古老的文字之一，也是使用者最多的文字。汉字大约有 6 万个，但常用的基本汉字只有 6000 个左右。据权威专家估计，汉字有 5000 多年的历史，最初源于记录事情的图片。从古至今，汉字的形式和结构发生了很大改变。历史上，汉字被朝鲜、日本、越南等国借鉴，因此也促进了国际交流。

热点演练 31

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

风水（Fengshui）是中国建筑中的一个特殊的传统，是古人对空间的布置与安排方法，其目的是为了体现建筑与环境的和谐共存。风水的字面意思就是“风和水”。风水通常将选址、设计、建筑直到内部和外部装修的整个过程联系在一起。它反对人对自然的破坏，强调人与环境的共处，这种状态被称为是完美的、神秘的。

热点演练 32

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国是诗的国度。尤其到了唐代，中国古典诗歌进入了全盛时期（heyday）。唐代三百年间，涌现出大批优秀诗人和杰出的诗歌作品。唐代诗歌数量极多，题材广泛，意象（image）和风格多样化，出现大量思想性和艺术性完美结合的作品，真正是一个诗歌的黄金时代。唐诗是中国人的千古绝唱。唐

代的伟大诗人不胜枚举，其中以李白、杜甫、王维的诗歌所蕴含的中国文化的意味和情趣，最具代表性。

热点演练 33

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

茶原产于中国。四千多年前，中国人就开始有饮茶的习惯了。唐代时，日本的僧人从中国引入茶种，与同样是引入的禅宗思想（Zen Buddhism）相结合，形成了闻名世界的日本茶道（Japanese tea ceremony）。17 世纪时，荷兰商人将中国人饮茶的习惯带到欧洲，进而形成了欧洲人喝茶的传统。在 19 世纪之前，世界各地饮用的茶叶都来自中国。英文中茶叶的读音就是根据福建方言中茶的读音而来的。茶，是中国人对世界的重要贡献。

热点演练 34

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

在上海、北京、南京、广州等许多城市中，穿着唐装（traditional Chinese garment）的时髦女子成为一道美丽的风景线。传统唐装做工细致，色彩艳丽，充满了戏剧化、贵族化（aristocratic）气息。前些年唐装还大多是明星、要人在极正式场合的衣着，普通人可能只在婚礼上才穿。不过，现在开始流行的唐装，在概念上已经有所变化：颜色更加柔和，款式更加随意，价格更加便宜。唐装正朝年轻化、休闲化、大众化、便利化发展。

热点演练 35

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

铜鼓（bronze drum）文化是远古时代在包括长江以南到东南亚的广阔地区流行的一种典型文化代表。在古代，铜鼓多用于祭神、征战和喜庆活动。在祭神时，它是神圣的法器（artifact）；在节日里，它是最激动人心的打击乐器（percussion instrument）；征战时，它又成为号令军队的振作士气的军乐器。铜鼓给人们带来的不仅是精神层面的东西，它还有重要的实用价值。许多少数民族依然保持着在传统节日及婚娶和丧葬等场合使用铜鼓的习俗。

热点演练 36

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

在中国，笔、墨、纸、砚（ink stone）就是人们所说的文房四宝（the Four Treasures of the Study）。作为文化艺术工具，文房四宝以其独特性催生了汉字特有的书法艺术，也促使中国画形成了独特风格。文房四宝不仅有实用价值，其本身也是供人观赏的艺术品，并逐渐发展成为收藏品。文房四宝种类繁多，选材制作不断趋于完善精美，历代都有名品名匠产生。文房四宝在中国的书法、绘画、收藏等活动中，起着不可替代的作用。

热点演练 37

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

当今社会，客来敬茶已经成为人们日常社交和家庭生活中普遍的往来礼仪（etiquette）。上茶时应以右手端茶，从客人的右方奉上，并面带微笑。当然，喝茶的客人也要以礼还礼，双手接过，点头致谢。另外，可适当称赞主人茶好。总之，敬茶是国人礼仪中待客的一种日常礼节，也是社会交往的一项内容。它

不仅是对客人、朋友的尊敬，也能体现自己的修养（self-cultivation）。

热点演练 38

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

面条并不是中国饮食的专利。在面条发明者的问题上，中国人和意大利人相争了多年。其实面条是世界性的大众食品。许多民族都有独特的制作方法，仅是中国面条的做法就有成百上千种。面条在中国历史悠久，分布甚广。面条制作简单，并根据个人的口味和地方习惯，加入不同佐料（condiments）制成多种面条，并可采用多种烹调方法，因此很受消费者欢迎。

热点演练 39

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

文化因素对旅游业的转换和可持续发展至关重要。文化旅游有助于保持传统长存并为保护自然人文遗产提供资金，也能增进游客对于遗产的了解。中国繁荣文化和旅游业的国家政策强调了这两个产业的联合发展。对环境有益的文化旅游产业将会创造工作岗位，促进当地经济发展，最重要的是能满足人们的文化和精神需求。

热点演练 40

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国的十二生肖（zodiac）各有优缺点。无可争议最受人们喜爱的生肖当属龙、虎和马，因为根据中国的民间说法，它们往往会带来成功。但就一些对生肖的解读而言，羊的优点却寥寥无几。羊年出生者通常被认为是被动、忠诚、慷慨和善良的人。这些美德在理想的世界里或许是美好的，但在“狗咬狗”的现实世界中却没什么用途。这是一个不公平的、过时了的迷信。

二、热点演练40篇参考答案

热点演练1

① 七八千年前的新石器时代，黄河流域的居民开始制作陶器。② 在明清两代，瓷器生产达到了顶峰。③ 在这两个朝代中，几乎整个瓷器业都集中在江西省景德镇。④ 明朝，瓷器被大量运往中东和近东地区。⑤ 在清末，政局动荡不可避免地对艺术造成了影响，所以中国瓷器的质量开始下降。⑥ 但是现在，随着中国文化在国内外越来越受到认可，瓷器生产得到复兴。	① Seven or eight thousand years ago during the new Stone Age, the inhabitants of the Yellow River Basin began to make pottery. ② Porcelain manufacture reached its height of excellence in Ming and Qing Dynasties. ③ During these dynasties, almost the entire porcelain industry was concentrated in Jingdezhen, Jiangxi Province. ④ In the Ming Dynasty, porcelain was shipped in large quantities to the Middle East and Near East. ⑤ The quality of Chinese porcelain began to decline from the end of the Qing dynasty as political instability took its inevitable toll on the arts. ⑥ However, nowadays the production of porcelain is being revived as Chinese culture gains greater recognition both at home and abroad.

主题：中国传统文化——瓷器

难点及词汇注释：

句①“七八千年”表示约数，可用“seven or eight thousand years”来表达。

句②“达到顶峰”可用“reach the height of excellence”来表达。

句③“在这两个朝代中”指代前一句提到的“明清两代”，不必将具体数字

“两个”翻译出来，只用 these dynasties 指代即可。

句④“大量”做状语，可译为“in large quantities”。

句⑤ 存在因果关系，分析句意可知，“中国瓷器的质量开始下降”为主句，“政局动荡……”则为原因状语从句。“对……造成影响”可译为“take one’s toll on sth.”。

句⑥“瓷器生产得到复兴”是一直在进行的动作，此处应使用现在进行时。“国内外”可译为“at home and abroad”。

热点演练 2

① 京剧是中国式戏剧的一种，兴起于 19 世纪中期，到清朝达到全盛时期。② 它被看成是中国文化艺术的瑰宝。③ 独树一帜的京剧艺术根植于博大精深的中华文化。④ 但是现在京剧并不受普通大众喜爱，亟须抢救、保护和继承。⑤ 当前的关键在于增强民族文化的自觉意识，建立民族文化自信，开掘京剧文化的现代价值，为优化人类文明提供精神营养。	① Peking opera is a kind of Chinese opera, which arose in the mid-19th century and was extremely popular in the Qing Dynasty. ② It is widely regarded as one of the cultural treasures of China. ③ The unique artistic values of Peking opera are deeply rooted in the broad and profound Chinese culture. ④ However, Peking opera has lost its popularity among the general public and must be rescued, protected and inherited. ⑤ The crucial point at present is to strengthen the sense of awareness of our national culture, to establish the confidence of national culture and to explore the modern cultural values of Peking opera so as to provide spiritual accomplishments for the improvement of human civilization.

主题：中国传统文化——京剧

难点及词汇注释：

句①“兴起于……”是对“京剧”的进一步说明，可用 which 引导非限制性定语从句来表达。

句②“瑰宝”可用 treasure 来表达。

句③“博大精深”可用“broad and profound”来表达；“植根于”可用“be rooted in”来表达。

句④ 包含两个独立的句子，可用 and 连接并列句子。“不受……喜爱”可用“lost its popularity among…”来表达。

句⑤ 句子较长，其中“为优化……”可译为 so as to… 目的状语从句。“增强……”“建立……”“开掘……”为并列谓语。

热点演练 3

① 中国是龙狮运动的发源地。② 舞龙、舞狮一直深受各族人民的喜爱。③ 它们长盛不衰，并由此形成了灿烂的龙狮文化。④ 长期以来，很多青年朋友都以为龙舞、狮舞就是春节、庙会、庆典时的喜庆表演，殊不知它历经了几千年的传承演变，积淀了深厚的历史文化，是祖先留给我们的极其宝贵的文化遗产。	① China is home to the Dragon Dance and Lion Dance. ② The two performances have been welcomed by people from various ethnic groups. ③ These activities have thrived for generations and formed a glorious dragon and lion dancing culture. ④ Many young people know that the dragon dance and lion dance are performed during festivals such as Spring Festival, Spring Festival fairs and celebrations. ⑤ But they don't know that after several thousand years the two activities have accumulated thick historical cultures and are extremely valuable cultural heritages handed down from our ancestors.

主题：中国传统文化——舞龙、舞狮

难点及词汇注释：

句①“是……的发源地”可用“home to…”表达。“龙狮运动”是指“舞龙、舞狮运动”。

句②“舞龙、舞狮”承接第一句中的“龙狮运动”，此处可用 the two performances 来表达，使句子更为简化。

句③ 可翻译成 and 连接的两个并列分句。

句④ 句子较长，可将“殊不知……”作为分界点，将其分为两个句子，由 but 连接。第一句主要表达“很多青年人以为……”；第二句主要表达“很多青年人不知道……”。“……是……的喜庆表演”可译为主谓结构，“春节、庙会、庆典时”可译为时间状语。“祖先留给我们的”可以译为过去分词短语 handed down from ancestors，做后置定语，修饰 cultural heritages。

热点演练 4

① 泥塑艺术是中华民间艺术的一种。② 民间艺人用天然的或廉价的材料，能够做出精美小巧的工艺品，博得民众的喜爱。③ 虽然泥塑并非以科技	① Clay sculpture art is a kind of Chinese folk art. ② The folk artisans use natural or cheap materials but can make small and exquisite artifacts, gaining popularity with common people. ③ Though clay sculptures

含量而论，但它确实在人们的生活中增加了新的亮点。④ 在高科技迅猛发展的今天，这种艺术形式是人们追求其返璞归真的具体写照，同时也是当今人们追求时尚、个性的一种体现。	are not technologically involved, they bring highlights to people's lives. ④ Today, with high technology developing rapidly, reflection upon this art form allows people to return to an original simplicity and allows for a manifestation of fashion and individuality.

主题：中国传统文化——泥塑

难点及词汇注释：

句①“民间艺术”可用 folk art 表达。

句②“精美”与“天然、廉价”构成语义上的转折，在翻译时可用 but 连接句子。“精美的”可用 exquisite 表达；“博得民众的喜爱”可译为现在分词短语，做伴随状语。

句③“并非以科技含量而论”表示“不含有科技含量”，可译为 not technologically involved。

句④“在高科技迅猛发展的今天”可译为 with…，表伴随。“返璞归真”可译为“return to an original simplicity”。

热点演练 5

① 造纸术是中国古代四大发明之一。② 在造纸术发明以前，中国人把字刻在或写在一些用起来非常笨重或昂贵的东西上，比如龟甲和绢帛上。③ 直到东汉时期，名叫蔡伦的官员发明了既适于书写又非常便宜的纸张。④ 之后，造纸术经由丝绸之路向东亚、西亚以及世界其他地区传播。⑤ 纸的发明极大地方便了信息的储存和交流，对于推动世界文明的发展具有重大意义。	① Papermaking is one of the four great inventions in ancient China. ② Before papermaking technology was invented, the Chinese carved or wrote characters on something heavy to use or expensive, such as tortoise shells and silk. ③ Till the Eastern Han Dynasty, an official named Cai Lun created paper, which was suitable for writing and also very cheap. ④ Later, the papermaking technique was spread to West and East Asia as well as other parts of the world via the Silk Road. ⑤ The invention of paper provides a convenient way for the storage and communication of information, and also has an epoch-making significance on the promotion of the development of global civilization.

主题：中国传统文化——造纸术

难点及词汇注释：

句①“中国古代四大发明”可译为“the four great inventions in ancient China”。

句②“用起来非常笨重或昂贵的东西”可译为“something heavy to use or expensive”。

句③“名叫蔡伦”可译为过去分词短语，做后置定语，修饰 official。“既适于书写有非常便宜的”可译为 which 引导的定语从句。

句④“经由丝绸之路”可译为 via the Silk Road，做方式状语。

句⑤“方便了……”可译为 provide a convenient way for…。

热点演练 6

① 扇子在中国有三四千年的悠久历史。② 一开始，扇子并不是用于降温，而是用来为外出视察的帝王遮阳和挡沙。③ 经过几千年的发展，扇子有了几百种，比如常见的有折扇、羽毛扇、绢扇等。④ 在历史上，中国生产的扇子被卖到日本、欧洲和美国，在这些地方中国扇对当地扇子生产和宫廷典礼产生了一定的影响。	① Fans enjoy a long history of about 3 to 4 thousand years in China. ② Fans, originally, were not used for cool, but for sheltering from the sun and keeping off sands for emperors during their outgoing inspections. ③ After several thousand years of development, fans were developed into several hundred types, like familiar ones as folding fans, feather fans and silk fans, etc. ④ In the history, fans made in China were sold to Japan and European and American countries, where Chinese fans exerted certain influences on the local fan-production and palace rites.

主题：中国传统文化——扇子

难点及词汇注释：

句① 为了使句子表达更有新意，在翻译“有……历史”时，除了 has a history of…，还可以用 enjoy 一词。

句②“而”表明，本句应使用 but 连接目的状语；“遮阳”可译为“shelter from the sun”；“挡沙”可译为“keep off sands”。

句④ 中“在这些地方”提示，此处可用 where 引导定语从句，来修饰其前提到的地点。

热点演练 7

①20 世纪 80 年代，自行车在中国人的日常生活中是不可或缺的，也是当时重要的交通工具，为此我国有了“自行车王国”的绰号。②但近几年，中国几乎所有主要城市的自行车数量都已急剧下降。③自 1995 年到 2005 年，中国自行车大军缩减了 35%，从 6.7 亿减至 4.35 亿。④自行车持有量从每户 1.9 辆减至每户 1.1 辆。⑤导致这一变化的部分原因可能是电动自行车数量的增长。	①In the 1980s, bicycles in China were indispensable in everyday life and were an important means of transportation, earning the country the nickname “the kingdom of bicycles”. ②But in recent years, the number of bicycles has declined dramatically in nearly all of China’s major cities. ③Between 1995 and 2005, China’s bike fleet reduced by 35 percent, from 670 million to 435 million. ④And bicycle ownership fell from 1.9 to 1.1 bicycles per household. ⑤The difference can partially be explained by the growing number of electric bicycles.

主题：中国社会发展——自行车数量的下降

难点及词汇注释：

句①中，表示“不可或缺的”可以用形容词 indispensable 或 vital，也可以译成 an essential part；“为此”表明后面内容是前面内容导致的结果，为了更准确、简洁地表达出前后的逻辑衔接关系，我们使用了 earn 一词，并将其处理成现在分词短语，来表结果，即 earning…，earning 后面使用了双宾语。

句②中，in recent years 与现在完成时连用；表示“急剧（下降）”用副词 dramatically。

句③中，表示“缩减了多少”用 reduce/decline by。

句⑤中，“导致……的部分原因可能是”我们将其译成被动结构…can partially be explained/ caused by…。

热点演练 8

①中国在全国范围内的“食品安全周”活动已经开始。②该活动由 14 家单位联合组织，包括国务院食品安全委员办公室、农业部和教育部。③10 天内将在全国举办大约 70 项活动，以呼吁大家捍卫食品安全。④官方称，在此次活动中，人们可以了解中国目前的食品安全形势，并就寻找措施和新	①China’s national “Food Safety week” has begun. ②It is jointly organized by 14 units including the State Council Food Safety Commission Office, Ministry of Agriculture, and Ministry of Education. ③Around 70 activities will be held during the 10 days around the country to call on everyone to safeguard food safety. ④Officials say people can learn about China’s current food safety situation and discuss measures and new technologies

技术来确保食品安全展开讨论。⑤最近几年，中国面临严重的食品安全问题，涉及肉类、牛奶、水以及酒等各方面的丑闻。	to ensure food safety on the event. ⑤ In recent years, China has faced serious food safety problems, including scandals involving meat, milk, water, and wine.

主题：中国社会发展——食品安全问题

难点及词汇注释：

句①中，“全国范围内”用形容词 national 表达即可，修饰“Food Safety week”，其本身就代表一项活动，不需要再加 activity。

句②中，“由……联合组织”译为 be jointly organized by…。

句③中，该句为无主句，英语习惯用被动句表达；“以呼吁……”译为不定式短语，作目的状语，即 to call on…。

句④中，本句包含并列结构，故译成并列谓语 learn…, and discuss…。

句⑤中，“涉及……”补充说明食品安全问题，译成介词短语 including…；“肉类、牛奶、水以及酒等各方面的”作“丑闻”的定语，译成现在分词短语 involving…作后置定语。

热点演练 9

①家庭是社会的“基本细胞”，也是对人类社会产生重要影响的个体单位。② 上世纪 80 年代以来，全世界家庭数目急剧增加，家庭规模日趋缩小，离婚率普遍上升，人口老龄化问题日益严重，人们的家庭观念也在发生变化。③ 家庭所发生的深刻变化给社会发展带来巨大冲击，需要国际社会更多关注。	① Family is the “basic cell” of a society and is also an individual unit that could have an important impact on human society. ② Since 1980s, the number of families across the whole world has been increasing dramatically, the family scale has been downsizing gradually, the divorce rate has been ascending, the aging of the population has become increasingly serious and people’s family values have been undergoing changes. ③ The profound changes happening in families have weighed heavily on the development of our society, which needs great attention from the international community.

主题：中国社会热点——家庭结构的变化

难点及词汇注释：

句① 由两个句子构成，可用 and 连接。“基本细胞”可译为“basic cell”；“个体单位”可译为“individual unit”。

句②“家庭数目急剧增加”“家庭规模日趋缩小”“离婚率普遍上升”“人口老龄化问题日益严重”“家庭观念发生变化”为并列的句子结构，可用

and 连接。注意时间状语“上世纪 80 年代以来”提示，主句应用完成时态。
句③“给……带来巨大冲击”可译为“weigh heavily on…”；“需要国际社会更多关注”可译为 which 引导的定语从句，修饰主句。

热点演练 10

① 龙的文化存在于东西方世界中。② 但龙在中国和在西方文化中的名声不同。③ 在西方文化中，龙是来自地狱的孽畜。④ 它们通常长有翅膀，口中能喷火。⑤ 龙深深根植在中国文化中，所以中国人经常视自己为“龙的传人”。⑥ 在中国文化中，龙大度、聪慧。⑦ 它们与古代皇室密切相连。⑧ 根据民间信仰，如果你在龙年出生，你会成为一名睿智、勇敢的领导者。	① Dragon culture exists in both the Eastern and the Western world. ② However, dragons have different reputations in Western culture and in Chinese culture. ③ The Western dragons are evil animals from hell. ④ They usually have wings and can send out fire from their mouths. ⑤ Dragons are deeply rooted in Chinese culture, so the Chinese often consider themselves as “the descendants of the dragon”. ⑥ In Chinese culture, dragons are generous and wise. ⑦ They are closely connected with the ancient royal family. ⑧ According to the popular belief, if you are born in the year of dragon, you will be an intelligent and brave leader.

主题：中国传统文化——“龙”的文化
难点及词汇注释：
句③“孽畜”可译为“evil animals”。
句⑤“根植于”可译为“be rooted in…”；“龙的传人”可译为“the descendants of the dragon”。
句⑧“民间信仰”可译为“popular belief”。

热点演练 11

①粽子是端午节的一种传统食物，其历史可以追溯到大约公元前 300 年。②这一节日是为了纪念爱国主义诗人屈原的死。③屈原因国家败落而投河自尽。④为避免其尸体被鱼吃掉，当地人用竹叶将米包起来，扔进河里喂鱼。⑤粽子要包得棱角分明，这代表屈原不	①Zongzi, a traditional food people eat during the Dragon Boat Festival, has a history dating back to around 300 BC. ②The festival commemorates the death of a patriotic poet Qu Yuan. ③ He drowned himself in a river because of the downfall of his nation. ④To keep his body from being eaten by fish, locals wrapped rice in bamboo leaves and threw them into the river to feed the fish. ⑤Zongzi

屈的性格。⑥屈原死后，人们划船寻找他的尸体。⑦在他的家乡湖北秭归，龙舟节被看作是比春节还要盛大的活动。	is made to have very clear edges and angles, which is meant to resemble the unyielding character of Qu Yuan. ⑥ After Qu Yuan's death, people rowed boats to look for his body. ⑦ In his home town Zigui in central China's Hubei province, the Dragon Boat Festival is regarded a bigger event than the Chinese New Year.

主题：中国传统文化——端午节

难点及词汇注释：

句①中，本句包含两个句子，为了表达简洁，我们将前一句中的“端午节的一种传统食物”译成“粽子”的同位语；“追溯到……”用 date back to 表达，我们将其译成现在分词短语 dating back to…，做 history 的后置定语。

句②中，“纪念”可以用动词 commemorate/ remember 表达，也可以用介词短语 in memory of 表达。

句⑤中，“棱角分明”译为 have clear edges and angles；后一句“这代表……”是对前一句的补充说明，我们将其处理成 which 引导的非限制性定语从句。

句⑦中，“比……还盛大的节日”译为比较结构 a bigger festival/ event than the Chinese New Year。

热点演练 12

① 豆腐，由大豆制成，是享誉世界的中国传统美食。② 据说豆腐起源于西汉时期。③ 由于制作简单、价格低廉，豆腐很快成为人们喜爱的佳肴。④ 宋明时代后，豆腐文化传播更为广泛。⑤ 如今，豆腐和其衍生产品对中国人来说是一种普通食品，它还走出国门，在全世界都受到欢迎。⑥ 豆腐——中国传统食品——由于其高蛋白、低热量，而被普遍认为是理想食品。	① Tofu, made of soybean, is a traditional Chinese food known throughout the world. ② Tofu is said to originate in the Western Han Dynasty. ③ Simple in production and cheap in cost, tofu soon became people's favorite delicacy. ④ After the Song and Ming Dynasties, the culture of tofu spread even more widely. ⑤ Today, tofu with its derivative products has become a common food for Chinese people, and it has gone abroad and become popular in the whole world. ⑥ Tofu—the traditional Chinese food, has been universally acknowledged as an ideal food for its high protein and low heat.

主题：中国饮食文化——豆腐

难点及词汇注释：

句①“由大豆制成”可译为过去分词短语，做后置定语，修饰主语。“享誉世

界的”可译为过去分词短语 known throughout the world，做后置定语，修饰 food。
句②“据说”可译为“be said to”。
句③“制作简单”“价格低廉”可译为“simple in production”“cheap in cost”。“佳肴”可译为“delicacy”。
句⑥“由于其高蛋白、低热量”可译为“for its high protein and low heat”。

热点演练 13

① 中国人就座的方式是餐桌礼仪的一个有趣部分。② 你可能会感到奇怪，在中国文化中，一个典型的座位安排其实就是礼仪的象征。③ 因此，为了安全起见，应该把餐桌上最好的位置留给长辈。④ 如果餐桌是矩形的，那么长辈就会坐在桌边最短的一侧，面朝前门。⑤ 其他人则会按照年龄按降序顺序就座。⑥ 但是如果餐桌是圆的，长辈则应该坐在里面的座位。	① The way Chinese people get seated is an interesting part of the table manners. ② It might surprise you that a typical seating arrangement is a sign of etiquettes in the Chinese culture. ③ Therefore, it is ensured to leave the best place on the dining table for elders. ④ If the dining table is rectangular, the elder member sits on the shortest side with his face towards the front door. ⑤ The rest of the people would get seated in the descending order of their ages. ⑥ However, if you are dining on a round table, the elder member should be seated on the inside seat.

主题：中国传统文化——餐桌礼仪
难点及词汇注释：
句①“餐桌礼仪”可译为“table manners”。
句②“在中国文化中……”可译为 surprise 真正的主语。
句③ 可译为“it is ensured to…”的形式。
句④“面朝前门”可译为 with his face towards the front door，做伴随状语。
句⑤“按照年龄按降序”可译为“in the descending order of their ages”。

热点演练 14

① 中国烹饪文化又被称作中国饮食文化，是中国文化中有关烹饪和休闲的重要组成部分。② 中国烹饪文化就和中国的历史一样神秘莫测。③ 中国的美食也因为长期向世界其他地区广泛传播而享誉全球。④ 世	① Chinese cuisine culture also called Chinese food culture is an important part of Chinese culture in the aspect of cooking and leisure. ② Chinese cuisine culture goes mysterious as the history of China goes. ③ Chinese food also has a worldwide reputation due to its long-term spread from China to the

界各国著名的唐人街也首先因其中国美食服务而为人所知。⑤ 现在，中国美食在世界各个角落都能轻松找到，也成为一种令人印象深刻的和有影响力的中国文化的象征。	other regions of the world. ④ The famous China Towns in different countries are firstly known by their special service of Chinese food. ⑤ Currently, Chinese food is easily found in every corner of the world, and it has become an impressive and influential symbol of Chinese culture.
主题：中国传统文化——中国饮食文化 **难点及词汇注释：** 句①“又被称作中国饮食文化”可译为过去分词短语，做后置定语，修饰 cuisine culture。“有关……”可译为“in the aspect of…”。 句③“因为长期向世界其他地区广泛传播”可译为“due to its long-term spread from China to the other regions of the world”。 句④“唐人街”可译为“China Town”。 句⑤ 可用 and 连接前后两个分句。“令人印象深刻的”可译为“impressive”。	

热点演练 15

① 元宵节的起源必定跟古代人们使用火来庆祝节日、躲避灾难有关。② 元宵节活动包括祭祀神明，且是在晚上庆祝，所以很自然地，火就扮演了很重要的角色。③ 随着时间的流逝，元宵节逐渐演变为今天的形式。④ 东汉时期，佛教传入中国，皇帝下令，在正月第一个满月的晚上，必须点亮灯笼敬佛，这也使元宵节更增添了一份意义。	① It is sure that the origins of Lantern Festival are related to ancient humanity's use of fire to celebrate festivals and avert disaster. Since Lantern Festival involves making offerings to the deities and is celebrated at night, it is natural that fire would play an important role. Over time, Lantern Festival gradually evolved into its present form. When Buddhism was introduced to China during the Eastern Han Dynasty, the emperor decreed that on the night of the full moon of the first lunar month, lanterns should be lit to honor Buddha, adding yet another level of significance to Lantern Festival.
主题：中国传统文化——元宵节	

难点及词汇注释：

句①“必定”可译为“It is sure that…”；“躲避灾难”可译为“avert disaster”。

句②“祭祀”可译为“make offerings to…”。“所以”提示“元宵节活动包括……”应译为原因状语从句，可用 since 引导。“很自然地……”可译为“it is natural that…”句型。

句③“随着时间的流逝”可译为“over time”；“演变为”可译为“evolve into…”。

句④“正月”可译为“the first lunar month”。“这也使元宵节更增添了一份意义”可译为伴随状语“adding yet another level of significance to Lantern Festival”。

热点演练 16

① 不可否认，在整个中国历史中，孝心一直是中国文化的主要奠基石，植根于中国人民的内心中。② 但是，在当今社会中，由于激烈竞争，许多人不管自愿还是被迫，往往会将更多的精力和时间用在创业以及攀爬社会经济阶梯上。③ 然而，人们应该努力在家庭和工作中保持平衡。④ 如果一个人有意愿，那么即使不能定期，但经常探望和照顾父母也是可能实现的事。	① It is undeniable that throughout Chinese history, filial piety has been a major cornerstone of the Chinese culture, and has taken its root in the hearts of the Chinese people. ② However, given the fierce competition in society, many people, voluntarily or forcibly, tend to put more energy and time to build their career and climb up the socio-economic ladder. ③ Nevertheless, people have to make efforts to maintain a balance between family and work. ④ Visiting frequently and taking care of parents, if not regularly, is possible if one has the will to do so.

主题：中国传统文化——孝心

难点及词汇注释：

句①“不可否认……”可译为“It is undeniable that…”句型。“奠基石”可译为“cornerstone”。

句②“不管自愿还是被迫”可译为独立状语“voluntarily or forcibly”。“社会经济阶梯”可译为“socio-economic ladder”。

句④“那么即使不能定期”可译为“if not regularly”，做插入语。

热点演练 17

①中国首次购车者的平均年龄正在下降，而随着年轻一代越来越囊中羞涩，许多年轻人准备购买更小型的汽车。②全球汽车制造商们注意到了这一趋势，在正在进行的上海汽车展上很多商家展出了小型汽车。③一项在线调查表明，30%已经拥有汽车的人计划下一次会购买更小型的汽车，而大约40%的人表示想要购买小型车作为他们的第一辆车。④中国自从2006年起就对购买小型车提出了激励措施，但小型车目前仍只占中国市场份额的10%。	① The average age of first time car buyers in China is falling, and with a more cash strapped wallet for the younger generation, many are looking to purchase a smaller car. ②Global automakers are paying attention to this trend, and many are showing off small cars at the ongoing Shanghai Auto Show. ③ An online survey suggests 30 percent of car owners plan to buy a smaller car next time around, and about 40 percent want to buy small cars as their first vehicle. ④China has offered incentives to buy small cars since 2006, but small cars still only make up 10 percent of China's market share.

主题：中国社会经济——购买小型车的趋势

难点及词汇注释：

句①中，“而”连接两个句子，前后是并列关系，译为 and 连接的并列句；“平均年龄”译为 average age；“正在下降”用现在进行时表达；“随着”用介词 with 表达；“准备购买”译为 is looking to purchase，进行时表将来。

句②中，逗号前后为并列关系，译为 and 连接的两个并列分句；“正在进行的”用形容词 ongoing 表达；“炫耀”用动词短语 show off 表达。

句④中，“自从”用 since 表达，与现在完成时连用；“激励措施”用名词 incentive 表达；“占有（市场份额）”用动词短语 make up 表达。

热点演练 18

①春节是中国阴历中最重要的节日。②每年这个时候，外出务工的人们都会离开工作的工厂和城市返回家乡。③在此期间，多数大城市的商店会关门，街道上空空荡荡，这种现象证明了外来务工者对城市经济所起到的重要作用。④以往，外出务工的人们会在拼命买到火车票后，挤火车返回家乡。	①The New Year is the most important holiday in the Chinese calendar. ② At this time of year, migrant workers leave the factories and cities where they work to return home. ③During that time, shops are locked and boarded up and streets are empty in most major cities, a testament to the role the migrants play in the urban economy. ④ Migrants traditionally return home by packing into trains, after having battled to secure tickets.

⑤今年中国预计会有 1.45 亿人乘坐火车，而 5 年前这一数字只有 1.05 亿。此外，今年还有 2400 万人会乘坐飞机返乡。	⑤This year, China expects 145 million people to travel by rail, compared with just 105 million five years ago, and 24 million people will travel by air.

主题：中国传统习俗——回家过年

难点及词汇注释：

句①中，表示“中国阴历”用 Chinese (lunar) calendar，lunar 可以不加。

句②中，表示“外出务工的人们”用 migrant workers。

句③中，这里的“关门”不是真正的停业，故用 locked and boarded up 表达更形象准确；“这种现象证明了……”可直接译成名词短语作同位语，即 a testament to the role…/ a proof to show the role…。

句④中，本句说的是传统的返乡模式，故“以往”可译作副词 traditionally；“拼命买到火车票”的动作发生在“挤火车回家”之前，故译作现在分词的完成式 having battled to…；“挤火车”可译作 pack into/ crowd into trains。

句⑤中，表示“与 5 年前的数字相比”用过去分词短语 compared with…。

热点演练 19

① 筷子好用还是刀叉好用？② 这是几个世纪以来东方和西方一直有争议的一个话题。③ 而现在从环保角度出发，这场旷日持久的辩论似乎终于可以尘埃落定了。④ 如今中国每年要砍掉 2000 万棵成熟树木，来满足人们使用一次性筷子的习惯。⑤ 而中国的森林里如今已经没有足够的木材来供应这样的需求。⑥ 中国现在是世界上最大的木材进口国，甚至还需要从美国进口筷子。	① It is a battle that has divided East and West for centuries: Are chopsticks superior to the knife and fork? ② Now the prolonged debate may finally be decided, on environmental grounds. ③ Today, China is chopping down 20 million mature trees a year to feed its disposable chopstick habit. ④ However, China can't find enough wood in its own forests to meet this demand. ⑤ China is now the world's largest importer of wood and even imports chopsticks from America.

主题：中国传统文化——筷子文化的消极影响

难点及词汇注释：

句② 中的“这”提示，此处可以将句① 译为“有争议的一个话题”的同位语。

句③“从……角度”可译为“from the point of”，“from the perspective of”以及“on… grounds”。
句④“砍掉”可译为“chop down”；“来满足……”表示目的，可用“to…”表达。
句⑤可译为“However, there is no enough wood in China's forests to meet this demand”，但这样不如“China can't find…”活泼。

热点演练 20

①启动更多的国际交流项目，把中国大学生送去国外参加文化和教育交流是大势所趋。②这是中国国际化的一部分。③随着全球经济一体化的发展，大学生需要意识到具备全球化视角的重要性。④越来越多国际交流项目使得国内大学生有机会去体验异国文化，尽管许多学生不得不离开各自的“舒适区”，但这种经历却十分令人难忘。⑤与此同时，中国也从日益频繁的思想、知识和文化交流中获益匪浅。	① It is inevitable to have more international exchange programs that send students from Chinese universities abroad to engage in cultural and educational exchanges. ② This is a part of China's internationalization. ③ With the increasingly integrated global economy, it's sensible for university students to acquire a global view. ④ With more and more programs sending students abroad to get a taste of foreign culture, many of them have to leave their “comfort zone”, but this experience is memorable. ⑤ At the same time, China is also benefiting from the increased exchange of ideas, knowledge and culture.

主题：中国社会热点——国际交流

难点及词汇注释：

句①“国际交流项目”是“把中国大学生送去国外参加文化和教育交流”的逻辑主语，可将后者译为定语从句，对主语进行修饰，进一步说明主语。“……是大势所趋”可译为“It is inevitable to…”；“参加……”可译为“engage in…”。
句②“国际化”可译为 internationalization。
句③“经济一体化”可译为“integrated global economy”。
句④“越来越多国际交流项目……”是“许多学生……”的背景，在翻译时可将其处理为伴随状语 with…；“舒适区”可译为“comfort zone”；“难忘的”可译为“memorable”。
句⑤“从……中获益”可译为“benefit from…”。

热点演练 21

① 谈到中国美食时，不能不说说筷子，因为筷子是吃饭的重要工具。② 随着文明意识的发展，筷子在 3000 多年前就诞生了。③ 所以筷子也被西方人称为是“东方文明”。④ 如今，筷子不仅仅是吃饭工具。⑤ 根据国外研究来看，筷子还能帮助人们在进食时锻炼肌肉，开发大脑。⑥ 同时，筷子还有不同的材质，并以精美的设计进行装饰，因此也被看作一种艺术品，常常当作礼物来赠送。	① When it comes to Chinese food, chopsticks can never be missed, since they are important tools for eating. ② With the development of civilization awareness, the tool was invented 3000 years ago. ③ So chopsticks are also described by westerners as “Oriental Civilization”. ④ Nowadays, chopsticks are not simply tools for meal. ⑤ According to foreign studies, chopsticks can help people exercise their muscles and develop their brains while eating. ⑥ Meanwhile, made of different materials and decorated with beautiful designs, chopsticks therefore are seen as a kind of artwork, and are sent as gifts frequently.

主题：中国传统文化——筷子

难点及词汇注释：

句① 汉语中“提到……；谈到……”常用句型 when it comes to… 来表达。

句②“文明意识”可译为“civilization awareness”。

句③“东方文明”可译为“oriental civilization”。

句⑥“筷子还有不同的材质，并以精美的设计进行装饰”可翻译成状语“made of… and decorated with…”，表示状态。

热点演练 22

① 中国的高等教育正面临着一个困境，夹在职业教育与学术教育之间进退两难。② 为了实现工业与科技高速腾飞的理想，我国现如今对于受教育工人的需求量很大。③ 与此同时，教育模式却仍停留在传统，甚至是有些过时的水平。④ 这意味着，大学毕业生们在一个看重职业技能的就业市场里苦苦挣扎。	① China’s higher education is now facing a dilemma. ② It is caught between professional and academic education. ③ The country now needs a great number of well-educated workers to serve its expanding industrial and technological ambitions. ④ At the same time, the education model retains its traditional, even outdated approach, meaning graduates struggle in a market that emphasizes professional skills.

主题：中国社会热点——高等教育的困境

难点及词汇注释：

句① 分析句意可知，“夹在职业教育与学术教育之间进退两难”虽然从结构上看似是“中国的高等教育正面临着一个困境”的并列句，但其实它是对“困境”解释，可以用 that 引导同位语从句，如… dilemma that it is caught…，也可以将该句拆分为两个独立的句子。

句②“为了……”表示目的，可以翻译为不定式短语 to serve… ambitions。“实现……理想”也可以表达为“realize the dream of…”。

句④ 中的“这……”表明，其后内容是句③ 造成的结果，可将两句话合译为一句。在具体处理时，可以将句④ 译为 which 引导的定语从句，也可以将其译为动名词短语，做结果状语。“停留”可译为“retain”；“苦苦挣扎”可译为“struggle”。

热点演练 23

① 梦反映出人类内心世界，以及潜意识和意识之间的联系。② 在人类文明史上，梦始终被人们视为一个谜。③ 梦文化是中国古代文化的重要组成部分。④ 古人认为梦可以预示吉兆和恶运。⑤ 古人常常参照《周公解梦》一书来解读梦境。⑥ 由于梦的意义不相同，人们可以通过解梦来得知吉凶祸福的预兆。⑦ 在某种程度上，它是科学合理的。	① Dreams are reflections of humans' inner spaces and a connection between human sub-consciousness and consciousness. ② In human civilizations, dreams have always been regarded as a mystery. ③ Dream culture is an important part of ancient Chinese culture. ④ Ancient Chinese people thought that dreams can indicate auspice and adversity. ⑤ The book *Duke of Zhou Interprets Dreams* was usually used as a reference for ancient people to interpret their dreams. ⑥ Since different dreams have different meanings, people can get implications of auspice or adversity by interpreting them. ⑦ To some degree, it is scientifically reasonable.

主题：中国传统文化——梦的解读

难点及词汇注释：

句①“反映”的逻辑宾语是“内心世界”和“联系”，在翻译时应注意弄清句子成分。本句可翻译成“Dreams reflect…”，也可翻译成“Dreams are reflections of…”。

句②“始终”提示，本句应使用现在完成时态。“谜”可译为“mystery”。

句④“预示”可译为“indicate”或“predict”。

句⑤ 本句强调的是《周公解梦》，所以可将该句翻译成被动语态。“解读梦境”可译为“interpret dreams”。
句⑥“吉凶祸福”与上文提到的“吉兆”和“厄运”表达含义相同，可以使用相同的词语。
句⑦“在某种程度上”可译为“to some degree”或“to some extent”。

热点演练 24

①“睡眠证书”——这是中国年轻白领新造的一个新词，是指一个人经过短期的培训所考取的证书，而这些证书在职场中到底能发挥多大作用却是一个未知数。② 一些专家认为有必要“唤醒”这些证书并利用其增加求职机会。③ 但也有人认为，这些证书未必对职业发展有帮助，因为很多持有证书的人都缺乏相关工作经验，而这些经验才是应聘单位更为看重的。	①“Sleeping certificate”—a new term created by young Chinese white-collar workers, refers to the certificates earned from short-term training programs that hold dubious significance in the professional world. ② Some experts say it's necessary to “wake up” these certificates and make use of them to bolster one's job-hunting prospects. ③ Others, however, think the certificates won't necessarily come in handy for career development since most certificate holders lack relevant working experiences, which are more highlighted by employers.

主题：中国社会热点——证书是否对求职有作用

难点及词汇注释：

句① 的主干结构为“睡眠证书是指一个人经过短期的培训所考取的证书”；破折号后的内容是“睡眠证书”的同位语；“而这些证书……”则可译作“睡眠证书”的定语从句。“中国年轻白领创造的”可译为过去分词短语，做后置定语，修饰“新词”。
句③“有帮助”可以译为 help，但为了体现译者较高的词汇水平，可译为 come in handy，译为“派得上用处”。“而这些经验……”可译为“工作经验”的定语从句；“看重”可译为“highlight”。

热点演练 25

① 中国人喜欢在一起吃饭，这个传统可以追溯到很久之前。② 这反映出中国人喜欢团圆、不愿分离的观念——圆桌、圆	① Chinese like to eat together, which is a tradition that can be traced back in a long time ago. ② It reflects the Chinese notion of union versus division — round tables, round

盘、圆碗都象征着团圆和美满。③ 盘子通常放在桌子的中央，这样坐在桌子面前的所有人都可以吃得到。④ 一锅热汤尤其可以增加和谐、团圆的气氛。⑤ 最近一位美国汉学家的著作认为，中国人的集体观念就是从一同吃饭发展而来的。	dishes, and round bowls all symbolize union and perfection. ③ Dishes are usually placed at the center of the table so that everyone around the table can share them. ④ A hot pot, in particular, adds to the atmosphere of harmony and union. ⑤ A recent book by an American sinologist held that the Chinese collective tradition developed out of practice of eating together.

主题：中国传统文化——就餐习惯

难点及词汇注释：

句①“这个传统……”修饰“中国人……”，可译为 which 引导的非限制性定语从句。“追溯到”可译为“trace back”。

句②“……的观念”可译为“notion of + 名词（短语）”的形式；“观念”的定语“喜欢团圆、不愿分离”可译为“liking union and hating separation/division”，但这种表达并不地道，可译为“union versus division”。

句③“这样……”是前一句的结果，可译为 so that… 引导的结果状语从句。

句④“增加”可译为“add to”。

热点演练 26

① 传统中国绘画是一门独特的艺术，无论是风格还是技巧都与世界其他艺术门类迥然不同。② 传统的日本绘画可能算是例外，但是不要忘了，它是深受中国文化影响的。③ 中国人绘画采用毛笔蘸墨汁或颜料，灵巧地挥洒在纸上。④ 画家用深、浅、浓、淡的点和线构成一幅图画。⑤ 在优秀画家的手里，毛笔和墨汁不仅是绘画的工具，也是画家艺术追求的象征。	① Traditional Chinese paintings constitute a unique school of art, which is widely different from any other art schools in the world, no matter in style or in techniques. ② Traditional Japanese art may be the only exception, but it has to be remembered that it has been heavily influenced by the Chinese culture. ③ The Chinese do paintings with brushes, dipping them in ink or paint and then skillfully wielding them on paper. ④ Painters produce pictures with lines and dots—some heavy, some light, and some deep, some pale. ⑤ In the hands of a good painter, brushes and ink are not only tools for drawing pictures, but also the symbol of his or her art pursuit.

主题：中国传统文化——中国传统绘画

难点及词汇注释：

句①“无论……”的逻辑主语是“独特的艺术”，在翻译时，可将其译为 which 引导的定语从句；“与……迥然不同”可译为“be widely different from…”。“一门”与“门类”在此处是指“（艺术）流派”，可译为“school”。

句②“不要忘了”在汉语中是祈使句，但如果翻译成英语的祈使句则会使句子结构显得不伦不类，所以应将其转译为“it is important to remember…”或“it has to be remembered…”。

句③“蘸墨汁或颜料”的逻辑主语是“毛笔”，在翻译时可将其处理为现在分词短语，做伴随状语，描述“使用毛笔”的动作。“灵巧地……”动作发生在“采用毛笔蘸墨汁或颜料”的动作之后，在翻译时可添加表示时间先后的副词“then”。

句④“深、浅、浓、淡”为修饰“点和线”的形容词，在翻译主干成分时可不予考虑，将其处理为独立的修饰成分。

句⑤“不仅……也是……”可译为“not only… but also…”。

热点演练 27

① 秧歌舞是中国的一种传统民间舞蹈，通常在北方省份表演。② 秧歌舞者通常穿上多彩的表演服装，他们的表演动作有力迅速。③ 在农历春节、元宵节等节日期间，人们一旦听到锣鼓声，不管外面天气有多冷，都会蜂拥到街上看秧歌舞表演。④ 近年来，中国东北某些城市的老年人自发组织了秧歌队，队员常年通过跳秧歌舞来保持健康，同时他们也乐在其中。	① Yangko is one of the traditional folk dances in China, which is usually performed in northern provinces. ② The dancers usually wear colorful costumes, and the performance is powerful and rapid. ③ During some festivals such as Spring Festival and Lantern Festival, on hearing the drums, people will flock to the street to appreciate the Yangko, no matter how cold it is. ④ In recent years, the old people in cities of east-northern China voluntarily organized the team of Yangko, and they could keep healthy and acquire happiness from performing Yangko.

主题：中国传统文化——秧歌舞

难点及词汇注释：

句①“通常在北方省份表演”在翻译时可处理为前一句的定语从句，由 which 引导。

句② 由两个独立的句子构成，可译为 and 连接的并列句。“有力迅速”可译为“powerful and rapid”。
句③“锣鼓声”可译为“drum”；“蜂拥到……”可译为“flock to…”。
句④“自发”可译为“voluntarily”。

热点演练 28

① 每逢新春佳节，吃饺子已经成为中国的习俗。② 究其原因，首先是因为饺子形如金元宝，人们在春节吃饺子取“招财进宝”之意；二是饺子有馅，便于人们把各种吉祥的东西包到馅里，以寄托人们对新的一年的祈望。③ 人们常常将花生、枣和栗子等包进馅里。④ 吃到花生的人将健康长寿，吃到枣和栗子的人将早生贵子。	① It’s a Chinese custom to eat dumplings during the Spring Festivals. ② The first reason for it is that dumplings are shaped like gold ingots, which people eat during the Spring Festivals, in the hope of bringing in wealth and treasures. ③ The second reason is that dumplings are stuffed with fillings, allowing people to put a variety of auspicious things into it, and in this way people pin their hopes for the next year. ④ People often put peanuts, Chinese dates and chestnuts inside the dumplings. ⑤ Those who eat peanuts will be healthy and live a long life; those who eat Chinese dates and chestnuts will have a baby soon.

主题：中国传统文化——饺子

难点及词汇注释：

句①“每逢新春佳节”是指“在每年的春节”，可译为“during the Spring Festivals”。

句② 本句由分号连接两个并列的句子，因句子过长，可以分号为界，将其拆分为两个句子。第一个句子中，“人们在春节……”是对前一句的解释说明，可译为 which 引导的定语从句，修饰“饺子”。“形如……”可译为“be shaped like…”；“招财进宝”中“招”和“进”可译为同一个英语单词 bring。第二个句子中“便于……”表示“饺子有馅”的目的，可译为现在分词短语做伴随状语 allowing people…。“寄托……的祈望”可译为“pin hopes for…”。

句④ 包含两个句子，可用 and 连接，也可用分号连接。“吃到花生的”和“吃到枣和栗子的”均为修饰其前“人”的定语，可将其译为 who 引导的定语从句。

热点演练 29

① 中国人春节张贴门神像是一项重要的风俗。② 门神像就是张贴在屋内屋外门上的神灵的画像。③ 人们希望它们能驱鬼、保护家人、带来平安和吉祥。④ 胖娃娃的图画通常被认为是屋内的门神，意味着好运、长寿和人丁兴旺。⑤ 大门的门神有几种不同的形式，最早的门神是神荼和郁垒。⑥ 如今，最常见的门神是元朝时期流行起来的秦叔宝和尉迟恭。	① It is an important custom for Chinese to put up the pictures of door gods during the Spring Festival. ② The pictures of door gods are images of deities posted on the door outside and inside the house. ③ They are expected to keep ghosts away, protect the family and bring peace and good fortune. ④ The image of a chubby baby is usually considered as an inside-room door god, symbolizing good luck, longevity and fertility. ⑤ The main door gods come in several different forms, with the earliest ones being Shen Shu and Yu Lei. ⑥ Nowadays, the most common door gods are Qin Shubao and Yuchi Gong, who became popular during the Yuan Dynasty.

主题：中国传统文化——贴门神

难点及词汇注释：

句①“中国人春节张贴门神像”是句子主语，但译为英语时则显得主语过长，句子结构不协调，所以可用 it 做形式主语；“是……的风俗”可译为“be a custom to…”。

句②“张贴在屋内屋外门上的”做定语，修饰“神灵的画像”，根据二者的关系可知，此处应译为过去分词短语 posted on… ，做后置定语。

句③“人们”在本句中是泛指，并不是强调的对象，所以根据英语的表达习惯，可将该句译为被动语态。“驱鬼”可译为“keep ghosts away”。

句④“意味着……”在句中表示伴随，可译为现在分词短语 symbolizing…。

句⑥“元朝时期流行起来的”可处理为 who 引导的定语从句，修饰“秦叔宝和尉迟恭”。

热点演练 30

① 汉字（Chinese characters）是世界上最古老的文字之一，也是使用者最多的文字。② 汉字大约有 6 万个，但常用	① The Chinese characters are one of the oldest characters in the world, and also have the most users. ② There are about 60,000 Chinese characters, but only about 6,000

的基本汉字只有 6000 个左右。③ 据权威专家估计，汉字有 5000 多年的历史，最初源于记录事情的图片。④ 从古至今，汉字的形式和结构发生了很大改变。⑤ 历史上，汉字被朝鲜、日本、越南等国借鉴，因此也促进了国际交流。	basic ones are often used. ③ As authorities estimate, Chinese characters have a history of over 5,000 years, and they originated from pictures for keeping records. ④ From ancient to modern times, the forms and structures of Chinese characters have changed much. ⑤ In history, Chinese characters were borrowed by Korea, Japan and Vietnam, thereby improving international communication.

主题：中国传统文化——汉字

难点及词汇注释：

句①“是……也是……”表示并列关系，在翻译时，可用 and 连接两个分句。

句②“基本汉字”可译为“basic Chinese characters”，但其前一句话中已出现了“汉字”，为了简洁起见，可用 basic ones 来代替。

句③“最初……”的主干成分是“源于图片”，“记录事情”是“图片”的定语，表明“图片”的作用，所以可译为“for”引导的介词短语 for keeping records。

句⑤“借鉴”可译为“borrow”。“因此……”做结果状语，可译为 thereby…。

热点演练 31

① 风水是中国建筑中的一个特殊的传统，是古人对空间的布置与安排方法，其目的是为了体现建筑与环境的和谐共存。② 风水的字面意思就是“风和水”。③ 风水通常将选址、设计、建筑直到内部和外部装修的整个过程联系在一起。④ 它反对人对自然的破坏，强调人与环境的共处，这种状态被称为是完美的、神秘的。	① Fengshui, a special Chinese tradition in architecture, is the ancient Chinese practice of placement and arrangement of space to achieve coexistence in harmony with the environment. ② Fengshui is literally translated as “wind and water”. ③ It usually links the whole process from site selection, designing, construction to interior and exterior decoration. ④ It repulses human destruction of nature and stresses cohabitation with the environment, which is regarded as perfect and mysterious.

主题：中国传统文化——风水

难点及词汇注释：

句①“是中国建筑中的一个特殊的传统”可译为“风水”的同位语 a special Chinese tradition in architecture。“其目的是……”可译为不定式短语“to…”。

句②“字面意思”可译为“be literally translated as”。

句③ 该句的主干结构为“风水将整个过程联系在一起”，翻译时抓住这一条主线即可。“将选址、设计、建筑直到内部和外部装修”可译为“过程”的定语，其中包含“从……到……”的结构，可译为“from… to…”。

句④“这种状态……”是对其前内容的解释说明，可译为 which 引导的非限制性定语从句进行修饰。

热点演练 32

① 中国是诗的国度。② 尤其到了唐代，中国古典诗歌进入了全盛时期。③ 唐代三百年间，涌现出大批优秀诗人和杰出的诗歌作品。④ 唐代诗歌数量极多，题材广泛，意象和风格多样化，出现大量思想性和艺术性完美结合的作品，真正是一个诗歌的黄金时代。⑤ 唐诗是中国人的千古绝唱。⑥ 唐代的伟大诗人不胜枚举，其中以李白、杜甫、王维的诗歌所蕴含的中国文化的意味和情趣，最具代表性。	① China is a country of poetry. ② Especially in the Tang Dynasty, Chinese classical poetry reaches its heyday. ③ During the three hundred years of the Tang Dynasty, a large number of excellent poets and outstanding poems mushroomed. ④ Poetry of the Tang Dynasty featured large quantities, broad themes and diversified images and styles, and many masterpieces with perfect combination of great thoughts and artistry emerged, which presents us a golden age of Chinese classical poetry. ⑤ Poetry of the Tang Dynasty is Chinese eternal legacies. ⑥ Li Bai, Du Fu, Wang Wei are the representatives of great poets of the Tang Dynasty with the unique meaning and temperament of Chinese culture in their poems.

主题：中国传统文化——诗歌

难点及词汇注释：

句②“进入全盛时期”可译为“reach its heyday”。

句③“涌现出”可译为“mushroom”。

句④“数量极多”“题材广泛”“意象和风格多样化”均是唐代诗歌的特点，可增译“feature”一词。“多样化”可译为“diversified”；“……的完美结合”可译为“perfect combination of…”。“真正是一个诗歌的黄金时代”是对其前句子的补充说明，可译为 which 引导的非限制性定语从句。

句⑤“千古绝唱”可译为“eternal legacy”。

句⑥ 该句的主干结构为“唐代不胜枚举的伟大诗人中，李白、杜甫、王维最具代表性”，翻译时抓住这一条主线即可。

热点演练 33

① 茶原产于中国。② 四千多年前，中国人就开始有饮茶的习惯了。③ 唐代时，日本的僧人从中国引入茶种，与同样是引入的禅宗思想相结合，形成了闻名世界的日本茶道。④ 17 世纪时，荷兰商人将中国人饮茶的习惯带到欧洲，进而形成了欧洲人喝茶的传统。⑤ 在 19 世纪之前，世界各地饮用的茶叶都来自中国。⑥ 英文中茶叶的读音就是根据福建方言中茶的读音而来的。⑦ 茶，是中国人对世界的重要贡献。	① Tea is originally produced in China. ② Ancient Chinese people formed a habit of drinking tea about 4,000 years ago. ③ During the Tang Dynasty, Japanese monks introduced tea seeds to Japan, thus combined with Zen Buddhism which was also introduced to Japan, so the world-famous Japanese tea ceremony was created. ④ In the 17th century, the Dutch businessmen took the Chinese habit of drinking tea to Europe, thus forming the European custom of drinking tea. ⑤ Before the 19th century, all the tea in the world was produced in China. ⑥ The pronunciation of “tea” in English is derived from Fujian dialect. ⑦ Tea is an important contribution made by the Chinese people to the world.

主题：中国传统文化——茶

难点及词汇注释：

句③ 本句以“形成了……”为界，其前句子是“形成了……”产生的前提，所以在翻译时可用 so 连接句子。“与同样是……”做后置定语，修饰“茶种”，根据二者之间的关系可译为过去分词短语 combined with…。

句④“进而……”表示结果，可译为现在分词短语 forming…。

句⑥“根据……而来”可译为“derive from…”。

热点演练 34

① 在上海、北京、南京、广州等许多城市中，穿着唐装的时髦女子成为一道美丽的风景线。② 传统唐装做工细致，色彩艳丽，充满了戏剧化、贵族化气息。③ 前些年唐装还大多是明星、要人在极正式场合的衣着，普通人可能只在婚礼上才穿。④ 不过，现在开始流行的唐装，在概念上已经有所变化：颜色更加柔和，款式更加随意，价格更加便宜。⑤ 唐装正朝年轻化、休闲化、大众化、便利化发展。	① In Shanghai, Beijing, Nanjing, Guangzhou and many other cities, fashionable women wear a traditional Chinese garment, making them a beautiful scenery line. ② Traditional Chinese garments, with their exquisite craftsmanship and rich colors, are both dramatic and aristocratic. ③ They were, in earlier years, worn only as formal dress by stars and important figures, and might be merely available to ordinary people in their weddings. ④ However, the traditional Chinese garment being in fashion now has conceptually been changed: The color is gentler, the style more free and the price lower than before. ⑤ It is becoming young and informal in style, and serving the ordinary people in a convenient way.

主题：中国传统文化——唐装

难点及词汇注释：

句① 该句主干结构为“女子成为一道美丽的风景线”，翻译时抓住这一条主线即可。“穿着唐装的”可译为现在分词短语 wearing… ，做后置定语，修饰“女子”。“风景线”可译为“scenery line”。

句②“做工细致，色彩艳丽”描述的是“唐装”的特点，可将其译为 with 引导的状语 with their exquisite craftsmanship and rich colors。

句③“要人”是指“重要的人”，可译为“important figures”。

句④“现在开始流行的”可译为现在分词短语，做定语，修饰“唐装”。“流行的”可译为“in fashion”。

句⑤ 句中四个“……化”看似是一致的，实际上前两个是指唐装的风格，后两个指的是服务的人群与方式，因此应分开处理，翻译时要增译“服务”一词，“大众化”也就是指普通人可以穿唐装，故可译为 serving the ordinary people。

热点演练 35

① 铜鼓文化是远古时代在包括长江以南到东南亚的广阔地区流行的一种典型文化代表。② 在古代，铜鼓多用于祭神、征战和喜庆活动。③ 在祭神时，它是神圣的法器；在节日里，它是最激动人心的打击乐器；征战时，它又成为号令军队的振作士气的军乐器。④ 铜鼓给人们带来的不仅是精神层面的东西，它还有重要的实用价值。⑤ 许多少数民族依然保持着在传统节日及婚娶和丧葬等场合使用铜鼓的习俗。	① The bronze drum was typically a kind of culture in the wide area ranging from South of Yangtze River in China to other regions of Southeast Asia in ancient times. ② More often than not, it was used on such occasions as sacrifice ceremonies to gods, launching ceremonies for the war and festival activities. ③ It was sacred artifact on the sacrifice ceremonies, exciting percussion instrument in festivals, military musical instrument transmitting orders to soldiers and reviving the morale in the war. ④ In addition to its spiritual content, the bronze drum also benefits people with its important value of practical use. ⑤ Many minority groups still adopt the tradition of playing bronze drums on the occasions of traditional festivals, wedding ceremony, funeral ceremony, etc.

主题：中国传统文化——铜鼓

难点及词汇注释：

句① 本句的主干为“铜鼓文化是一种典型文化代表”，在翻译时应抓住这一主要线索。“在包括长江以南到东南亚的广阔地区”中“广阔地区”是核心词，其他则为该词的修饰语，可译为现在分词短语 ranging from… to…。

句③ 是三个结构相似的小分句，主语是一致的，都是“铜鼓”，因而将其整合成一个句子即可。“在祭祀”“在节日里”“征战时”可译作时间状语。“号令军队……”可译为现在分词短语，修饰“军乐器”。

句④ “不仅……还有……”可译为“not only… but also…”，也可译为 in addition to…。

热点演练 36

① 在中国，笔、墨、纸、砚就是人们所说的文房四宝。② 作	① In China, the Four Treasures of the Study refers to brush, ink, paper and ink

为文化艺术工具，文房四宝以其独特性催生了汉字特有的书法艺术，也促使中国画形成了独特风格。③ 文房四宝不仅有实用价值，其本身也是供人观赏的艺术品，并逐渐发展成为收藏品。④ 文房四宝种类繁多，选材制作不断趋于完善精美，历代都有名品名匠产生。⑤ 文房四宝在中国的书法、绘画、收藏等活动中，起着不可替代的作用。	stone. ② As tools for culture and art, the Four Treasures of the Study, with their unique attributes, promoted the emergence of the unique art of calligraphy of Chinese character, as well as the formation of unique artistic style of Chinese painting. ③ They not only have pragmatic functions, but also become the works of art for appreciation and gradually for collection. ④ There is a large variety of these four treasures. ⑤ Material selecting and making process have become increasingly delicate and perfect. ⑥ Each dynasty in Chinese history sees famous craftsmen appear and works produced. ⑦ Now, the Four Treasures of the Study still plays an irreplaceable role in the field of Chinese calligraphy, painting and collection.

主题：中国传统文化——文房四宝

难点及词汇注释：

句① 主语是“笔、墨、纸、砚”，但在翻译成英语时，应注意灵活变换，将“文房四宝”作为主语。

句②“以其独特性”是对“文房四宝”的描述，可译为 with 引导的状语，即 with their unique attributes。

句③“文房四宝”与上文重复，可用 they 指代。“实用价值”可译为“pragmatic function”。

句④ 由三个小短句构成，但各自独立，可将其拆译为三个独立的简单句。

句⑤“起着不可替代的作用”可译为“play an irreplaceable role in…”。

热点演练 37

① 当今社会，客来敬茶已经成为人们日常社交和家庭生活中普遍的往来礼仪。② 上茶时应以右手端茶，从客人的右方奉上，并面带微笑。③ 当然，喝茶的客人也要以礼还礼，双手接过，点头致谢。④ 另外，	① Nowadays, offering tea to guests has become common etiquette in daily social interaction and family life. ② Tea cup should be held on the right hand and offered to guests with a smile from their right side. ③ Of course, the guests should pay respect as well, taking over the cup with both hands and nodding

可适当称赞主人茶好。⑤ 总之，敬茶是国人礼仪中待客的一种日常礼节，也是社会交往的一项内容。⑥ 它不仅是对客人、朋友的尊敬，也能体现自己的修养。	to express their thanks. In addition, they could praise the tea of the owner appropriately. ⑤ In short, offering tea is a daily ritual of Chinese people when receiving guests and it is also part of social interaction. It can not only show respect to guests and friends, but also reflect your self-cultivation.

主题：中国传统文化——敬茶礼仪

难点及词汇注释：

句①“客来敬茶”可译为“offer tea to guests”。

句②“端”和“奉上”的宾语均为“茶杯”，在译为英语时，可采用被动语态。“面带微笑”可译为伴随状语 with a smile。

句③“还礼”可译为“pay respect”；“双手接过，点头致谢”描述一种状态，可译为现在分词短语 taking over… and nodding to…。

句⑤“待客”可译为“receive guests”。

热点演练 38

① 面条并不是中国饮食的专利。② 在面条发明者的问题上，中国人和意大利人相争了多年。③ 其实面条是世界性的大众食品。④ 许多民族都有独特的制作方法，仅是中国面条的做法就有成百上千种。⑤ 面条在中国历史悠久，分布甚广。⑥ 面条制作简单，并根据个人的口味和地方习惯，加入不同佐料制成多种面条，并可采用多种烹调方法，因此很受消费者欢迎。	① Noodles are not exclusive to Chinese diet. ② For years, there has been a heated debate on the inventor of noodles between Chinese and Italian people. ③ In fact, noodles are popular food around the world. ④ There are unique methods of making noodles in many countries and just in China, there are hundreds of methods. ⑤ Noodles have a long history in China and are distributed widely. ⑥ They are easy to make and by adding different condiments, they can be made into the ones with different tastes, according to individual flavor and local customs. ⑦ Besides, noodles can be cooked by different means, so they are warmly welcomed by customers.

主题：中国传统文化——面条

难点及词汇注释：

句①“并不是……的专利”可理解为“并不是……独有的”，可译为“not exclusive to…”。

句②“相争了多年”提示，本句应使用现在完成时态。

句⑤“历史悠久”可译为“has a long history”。

句⑥ 句子较长，可以“并可采用……”为界，将其拆译为两个独立的句子。

热点演练 39

① 文化因素对旅游业的转换和可持续发展至关重要。② 文化旅游有助于保持传统长存并为保护自然人文遗产提供资金，也能增进游客对于遗产的了解。③ 中国繁荣文化和旅游业的国家政策强调了这两个产业的联合发展。④ 对环境有益的文化旅游产业将会创造工作岗位，促进当地经济发展，最重要的是能满足人们的文化和精神需求。	① The cultural element is essential to the transformation and sustainable development of tourism. ② Cultural tourism can help keep traditions alive and finance the protection of cultural and natural heritage, as well as increase visitor's appreciation of that heritage. ③ China's national strategies to boost the culture and tourism stressed the combined development of the two industries. ④ The environment-friendly cultural tourism industry will create jobs, boost local economy and most importantly meet people's cultural and spiritual needs.

主题：中国社会热点——文化旅游

难点及词汇注释：

句①“对……至关重要”可译为“be essential to…”。

句②“保持传统长存”可译为“keep traditions alive”；“为……提供资金”可用单词 finance 来表达；“也能……”可用 as well as… 连接。

句③“繁荣文化和旅游业”可译为目的状语，做后置定语，修饰 national strategies。

句④“对环境有益的”可译为“environment-friendly”。“创造……”“促进……”“满足……”为并列的谓语，可用 and 连接。

热点演练 40

① 中国的十二生肖各有优缺点。② 无可争议最受人们喜爱的生肖当属龙、虎和马，因为根据中国的民间说法，它们往往会带来成功。③ 但就一些对生肖的解读而言，羊的优点却寥寥无几。④ 羊年出生者通常被认为是被动、忠诚、慷慨和善良的人。⑤ 这些美德在理想的世界里或许是美好的，但在“狗咬狗”的现实世界中却没什么用途。⑥ 这是一个不公平的、过时了的迷信。	① Each of the 12 animals in the Chinese zodiac has it virtues and faults. ② The undisputed favorite is the dragon, the tiger and the horse, which are closely associated with success, according to Chinese folk sayings. ③ But sheep have fewer advantageous qualities, according to some zodiac interpretations. ④ Those born in sheep years are often thought of as passive, loyal, generous and kind. ⑤ These virtues may be wonderful in an ideal world, but not so useful in the “dog-eat-dog” real world. ⑥ It’s an unfair and outdated superstition.

主题：中国传统文化——生肖

难点及词汇注释：

句①“十二生肖”是指“生肖中的 12 种动物”，可译为“12 animals in the Chinese zodiac”。

句②“无可争议的”可译为“undisputed”。“因为……”可译为定语从句，修饰“龙、虎和马”。

句③“生肖解读”可译为“zodiac interpretations”。

句⑤“美德”可译为“virtues”。

句⑥“过时的”可译为“outdated”。

第二部分

写　作

写作导学 >>>

一、四级写作透视

（一）写作命题方向

1. 命题形式

四级写作的命题形式，在 2012 年 12 月考次之前，一直是以“英文 Directions + 中文提纲”的形式为主，偶尔会出现“英文 Directions + 中文提纲 + 图表”的形式，但自从 2012 年 12 月考次以后，四级写作开始变为只有英文 Directions 而无中文提纲的命题形式。

从近几次的四级真题来看，这种命题形式主要有四个类型：第一类是哲言命题，英文指示（Directions）中会给出一句能体现出主题的格言或警句或是类似的哲理性话语，要求考生从一定的角度进行分析评论，指示中可能会给出标题，也可能不给，需要考生自拟。第二类是图画或图表命题，命题中给出一个图画或图表，图画中一般会带有一些提示性语言，图表中会提供数据，英文指示（Directions）中则会要求结合图画或图表内容从一定的角度进行分析评论，与第一类命题一样，指示中可能会给出标题，也可能不给，需要考生自拟。第三类是情景式命题，除了英文指示（Directions）以外，命题中会给出简单的情景，要求考生根据该情景进行写作，这种命题经常会带有一定的应用文性质。第四类是单纯的英文 Directions 命题，Directions 中会给出主题和简单的要求，这类命题往往开放性较强，对内容和形式的限定比较宽泛，考生发挥的余地较大。

例 1 （2014 年 12 月（1））

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay about **a campus activity that has benefited you most.** You should state the reasons and write at least 120 words but no more than 180words.

分析：本题为单纯的英文 Directions 命题，要求记述一次让自己受益最大的校园活动，含有记叙文的性质，内容开放性较强，考生可根据自己的经历和情况自由发挥。

例 2 （2013 年 12 月（1））

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **the impact of the Internet on the way people communicate** and then **explain whether electronic communication can replace face-to-face contact.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

"Dear Andy—How are you? Your mother and I are fine. We both miss you and hope you are doing well. We look forward to seeing you again the next time your computer crashes and you come downstairs for something to eat. Love, Mom and Dad."

分析：本题属于图画命题形式（英文 Directions + 图画），命题中给出一幅图画，要求考生简要描述图画，并分析图画中所反映的现象。

例 3 （2011 年 12 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Nothing Succeeds Without a Strong Will** by commenting on the humorous saying, "Quitting smoking is the easiest thing in the world. I've done it hundreds of times." You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

分析：本题属于哲言命题形式（英文 Directions 中含哲言），命题指示中给出一句哲言，要求对该哲言进行评论，并结合哲言阐释其中的道理。

2. 题材及体裁

从题材上来看，四级作文主要涉及三个方面的话题：一是与学生学习、生活相关的话题，如 2013 年 6 月四级试题（2）的作文主题是关于"学习基本技能的重要性"；二是与人们生活息息相关和有关社会发展变化的热点话题，如 2013 年 12 月四级试题（1）的作文主题是关于"互联网对人们交流方式的影响"；三是关于人生哲理以及做人做事道理等方面的话题，如 2011 年 12 月四级作文的主题是关于"坚强的意志"。

从体裁上来看，四级作文基本都是短小的论说文，主要包括说明现象类、对策方法类、对比分析类以及道理阐释类；有时还会考查叙事类作文和应用文，其中也可能会涉及议论和说明的内容。以下是 2000 年以来四级作文真题的题材和类型统计：

考试时间	标题/主题	题材	作文类型	命题方式
2015 年 6 月（1）	Parents' Role in Their Children's Growth	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions +图画
2015 年 6 月（2）	This Kind of Modern Life	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions +图画
2015 年 6 月（3）	The Kid's Understanding of Going to School	校园生活	说明现象类	英文 Directions +图画
2014 年 12 月（1）	A Campus Activity That Has Benefited Me most	校园生活	叙事分析类	英文 Directions
2014 年 12 月（2）	A Course That Has Impressed Me Most in College.	学生学习	叙事分析类	英文 Directions
2014 年 12 月（3）	A Classmate of Mine Who Has Influenced Me Most in College	校园生活	叙事分析类	英文 Directions
2014 年 6 月（1）	The Most Interesting Place in My Hometown	日常生活	应用文(景点介绍)	英文 Directions +情景
2014 年 6 月（2）	The Most Interesting Place in Our Campus	校园生活	应用文(景点介绍)	英文 Directions +情景
2014 年 6 月（3）	The First Place I'd like to Take Him/Her to See	日常生活	应用文(景点介绍)	英文 Directions +情景
2013 年 12 月（1）	The Impact of the Internet on the Way People Communicate	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions +图画
2013 年 12 月（2）	The Increasing Use of the Mobile Phone in People's Life	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions +图画
2013 年 12 月（3）	The Impact of the Internet on Learning	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions +图画

（续）

考试时间	标题/主题	题材	作文类型	命题方式
2013 年 6 月（1）	The Importance of Reading Literature	学生学习	道理阐释类	英文 Directions + 图画
2013 年 6 月（2）	The Importance of Learning Basic Skills	学生学习	道理阐释类	英文 Directions + 图画
2013 年 6 月（3）	The Importance of Doing Small Things Before Undertaking Something Big	人生哲理	道理阐释类	英文 Directions + 图画
2012 年 12 月	Education Pays	学生学习	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 图表
2012 年 6 月	On Excessive Packaging	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2011 年 12 月	Nothing Succeeds Without a Strong Will	人生哲理	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2011 年 6 月	Online Shopping	社会热点	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2010 年 12 月	How Should Parents Help Children to Be Independent?	日常生活	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2010 年 6 月	Due Attention Should Be Given to Spelling	学生学习	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2009 年 12 月	Creating a Green Campus	学生生活	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2009 年 6 月	Free Admission to Museums	社会热点	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲

（续）

考试时间	标题/主题	题材	作文类型	命题方式
2008 年 12 月	Limiting the Use of Disposable Plastic Bags	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2008 年 6 月	Recreational Activities	日常生活	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2007 年 12 月	What Electives to Choose	学生学习	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2007 年 6 月	Welcome to Our Club	学生生活	应用文（海报）	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2006 年 12 月	On the Spring Festival Gala	日常生活	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2006 年 6 月（新题型）	On Students Selecting Lecturers	学生学习	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2006 年 6 月（老题型）	A Poster Recruiting Volunteers	学生生活	应用文（海报）	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2005 年 12 月	Should the University Campus Be Open to Tourists?	学生生活	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2005 年 6 月	Honor for My Teacher	学生生活	叙事分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2005 年 1 月	A Campaign Speech	学生生活	应用文(竞选演说词)	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2004 年 6 月	A Brief Introduction to a Tourist Attraction	社会热点	应用文(景点介绍)	英文 Directions + 中文提纲

（续）

考试时间	标题/主题	题材	作文类型	命题方式
2004 年 1 月	A Letter in Reply to a Friend	学生学习	应用文（建议信）	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2003 年 9 月	The Day My Classmate Fell Ill（or Got Injured）	学生生活	叙事分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2003 年 6 月	An Eye-Witness Account of a Traffic Accident	日常生活	叙事分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2003 年 1 月	It Pays to Be Honest	人生哲理	道理阐释类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2002 年 6 月	Student Use of Computers	学生学习	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲 + 图表
2002 年 1 月	A Letter to the University President About the Canteen Service on Campus	学生生活	应用文（建议信或投诉信）	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2001 年 6 月	A Letter to a Schoolmate	学生生活	应用文（建议信）	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2001 年 1 月	How to Succeed in a Job Interview?	社会热点	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2000 年 6 月	Is a Test of Spoken English Necessary?	学生学习	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2000 年 1 月	How I Finance My College Education?	学生生活	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲

（二）写作评分标准

大学英语四级考试大纲规定，四级写作部分所占分值比例为15%，标准分满分为106.5。阅卷评分时按照满分15分计算，最后，再换算成标准分。评分标准共分五个等级：2分、5分、8分、11分和14分。

阅卷人员根据阅卷标准对照样卷进行评分，先就总体印象划定作文等级，然后根据具体情况对分数进行适当调整。若认为与某一分数等级相似，即定为该分数，若阅卷过程中发现该作文稍优或稍劣于该分数，则可加1分或减1分。

在总体作文评分原则的指导下，四级作文的评分强调5项标准，即内容切题、表达清楚、文字连贯、句式多变和语言规范。各分数档的具体评判标准如下：

2分——条理不清，思路混乱，语言不连贯或大部分句子均有错误，且多数为严重错误。

5分——基本切题，表达思想不清楚，连贯性差，有较多的严重语言错误。

8分——基本切题，有些地方表达思想不够清楚，文字勉强连贯，语言错误相当多，其中有一些是严重错误。

11分——切题，表达思想清楚，文字连贯，但有少量语言错误。

14分——切题，表达思想清楚，文字通顺、连贯，基本上无语言错误，仅有个别小错。

（三）写作基本步骤

四级作文尽管结构并不复杂，但考生仍然需要遵照写作的基本步骤，这样才能避免出现思路不畅、衔接不当、偏题等问题。

第1步：确定各段主题

为了确保作文结构的完整性和紧密性，我们一般建议采用三段式。2012年12月考次以前，命题中大都会给出2~3点中文提纲，这对确定各段主题有很大的提示作用。但近两年的考试中，命题中不再有中文提纲及其他中文提示，而是会给出英文指示和图画或图表，这就给考生确定文章结构和段落主题增加了难度。考生需要结合指示内容或是图画、图表进行分析，从而理清写作思路，确定段落结构和各段主题。

第2步：列出各段提纲

确定各段主题以后，不要匆忙动笔，应该在草稿纸或心中将各段要写的内容大致列出，做到心中有数，这样才能行文流畅，衔接自然。

例（2012 年 12 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Education Pays** based on the statistics provided in the chart below (Weekly earnings of 2010). Please give a brief description of the chart first and then make comments on it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Education: A Worthy Investment
Weekly Earnings in 2010($)

Source: U. S. Bureau of Labor Statistics

第一段主题及提纲：描述图表中所反应的现象——概述图表内容；具体描述图表数据；总结图表现象，即“学历越高，收入越高”。
第二段主题：简要分析导致该现象的原因——社会发展的必然；新兴行业需要高级人才。
第三段主题：谈谈自己对该现象的看法——让人欣喜的现象，说明教育会得到回报。

第 3 步：逐一展开段落

一般来说，段落的基本构成包括：主题句、扩展句和结尾句。

主题句只有一句，要具有概括性，要表述清楚、简单明了，注意不可过长。扩展句是主题句内容的延伸和语意的补充，起到进一步阐述主题句、扩展段落中心思想的作用，因此一般都要在两句以上。结尾句也只有一句，主要用来总结段落的主要内容或得出结论，通常和段落主题句在意义上相互呼应。

需要注意的是，并不是每个段落都必须同时包含主题句、扩展句和结尾句，段落主题句与结尾句可以只有一个。

例（2012 年 12 月）

第一段	第一段
①The above bar chart shows us the earnings among people with different educational levels. ②In 2010, people possessing a doctoral degree have the highest weekly earnings of $1,550, and those possessing a bachelor's or master's degree	第 1 句：主题句——概述图表内容：不同教育水平人群的收入情况。 第 2 句：扩展句——具体

both more than $1,000, while those without a degree or with a lower diploma only earn $712 or less. ③ It can be seen clearly that the higher one's diploma is, the higher his earnings.	描述图表数据。 第 3 句：结尾句——总结图表现象：学历越高，收入越高。
第二段 ①This phenomenon, in my opinion, embodies the inevitability of social development. ②With the advancement of technology and the adjustment of industrial structure, quite a few high-tech industries emerge overnight, which brings a soaring demand for the workforces with good educational background, and naturally better earnings for them. ③In contrast, the ill-educated, lacking necessary knowledge and technology, only can do those easy jobs which pay not very well.	**第二段** 第 1 句：主题句——该现象是社会发展必然性的体现。 第 2 句：扩展句——具体阐述这种必然性。 第 3 句：扩展句——进一步阐述这种必然性。
第三段 ①I think this is an inspiring phenomenon and shows education is a worthy investment. ②Despite the increasing costs, we should believe it pays to spend time and money on education. ③Remember, knowledge is power; knowledge is wealth.	**第三段** 第 1 句：主题句——总体评价该现象：令人欣喜，说明教育值得投资。 第 2 句：扩展句——进一步阐述自己的看法。 第 3 句：结尾句——知识就是力量，知识就是财富。

第 4 步：通读全文检查

对于这一步，很多考生都会因为时间紧张而忽略，其实，花上 1～2 分钟的时间通读一遍全文，通常可以避免拼写、语法和句子结构方面的小错误，而这些看似很小的错误，很多时候会对作文分数等级的评定产生很大的影响。

二、典型试题自测

自测一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **the popularity of online shopping and then explain the advantages and disadvantages of it.** You should write at least 120 words but no

more than 180 words.

自测二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **children's dependence on their parents and then explain the importance of independence.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

三、范文及点评

自测一

框架搭建：由图画和提示内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述目前网上购物流行的现象；第二段对比分析网上购物的好处和问题；第三段针对网上购物给出“我”的建议。

范文

The picture describes vividly the phenomenon of online shopping. (1) With the rapid development of the Internet, online shopping has become more and more popular. It has become a fashion in many cities, (2) especially among young people like the woman in the picture.

(3①) The advantages of online shopping are obvious. It can save much time (4①) since people needn't step out of the room. Besides, it gives people a large range of choices. (5) Whatever goods and whichever brand you want, you can find it easily on the Internet. (3②) However, online shopping has some disadvantages. First, sometimes it is (6) less reliable (4②) since you

点评

本文属于典型的三段式结构，段落安排合理，各段详略得当；句型丰富多变，段与段、句与句之间过渡自然、衔接紧密；句式和用词上有很多闪光点，主要包括：

(1) 表示“随着……的发展”，注意 with 的用法。

(2) 意为“尤其，特别”，表示强调。

(3) 对比阐述好处和问题。

(4) since 引导原因状语从句，表示既定的原因，常译为“既然”。

(5) whatever 和 whichever 引导让步状语从句，表示“无

cannot see the practical products. Second, the personal information might be leaked out (7) when shopping online. (8) No doubt, online shopping is a very convenient shopping way. However, (9) considering its disadvantages, I suggest that laws and regulations should be made to ensure the order of online businesses. Besides, consumers should be more cautious when shopping online. (10) Only in this way can people enjoy the fun and convenience of online shopping.	论……”。 (6) 表示“不太可靠”，比较级使用恰当。 (7) when doing sth. 相当于省略了主语的时间状语从句。 (8) 表示“无疑”，副词短语开头，丰富了句式。 (9) considering 相当于介词，意为“考虑到，鉴于”。 (10) “only + 状语”位于句首，句子要求部分倒装。

自测二

框架搭建：由图画和提示内容可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述目前有些父母为孩子包办一切的现象，可简要分析其原因或坏处；第二段给家长提出几点建议，指出应该如何帮助孩子学会独立；第三段可对所给建议进行总结，或提出希望。

范文	点评
(1) As is showed in the picture, nowadays some parents tend to take on everything and make all decisions for their children, (2) including their study, job and even marriage. (3) Of course, most of them do this out of love. They hope they can give their children the best life and the shortest path to success. However, it (4①) doesn't help children a lot (4②) but make them become too much dependent. (5) It's high time for parents to help their children develop independence. (6①) Some suggestions are as follows. (6②) First, parents should give children chances to make their own decisions, (7) which is a necessary step to be independent. (6③) Second, parents should encourage children to (8①) work out a problem by themselves. If children meet the problem, parents may teach them	本文属于典型的三段式结构，段落安排合理，各段详略得当；句型丰富多变，段与段、句与句之间过渡自然、衔接紧密；句式和用词上有很多闪光点，主要包括： (1) 由图画引出问题。 (2) 现在分词短语做定语，首句体现语言功底。 (3) 承接自然。 (4) not… but 表示“不是，而是”，连接并列结构。 (5) “该是……的时候了”，常用于引出解决办法。

methods, but should not (8②) solve it for them. (6④) Third, (9①) to give children increasing responsibility is helpful. Children should understand they are givers to the family (10) but not only takers. (9②) To grow to be independent is the natural way one has to go through. Therefore, I (11) do hope parents can benefit from the suggestions mentioned above and help their children become a self-reliable person.	(6) 先总后分，脉络清晰。 (7) which 引导非限制性定语从句。 (8)“解决”采用不同说法，用词富于变换。 (9) 不定式短语做主语，句式富于变换。 (10) but not 表示“而不是”，连接并列结构。 (11) do 用以强调动词 hope，加强语气。

四、给考生的复习建议

我们相信，同学们将自己所写作文与所给范文进行对比以后，一定已经对自己在写作方面的弱势有所体会。从所给范文和点评中不难看出，一篇作文要想取得高分，首先，结构和框架必须安排合理；其次，句型要丰富，衔接要得当；最后，句式和用词上要有闪光点。

我们给考生的复习建议是，针对以上三个方面循序渐进，一一攻克：

第一步：掌握四级作文中高频作文类型的结构框架，熟悉高频作文类型的段落安排。

第二步：熟练掌握四级作文常涉段落中的常用句式写法，学会变换使用各类句型和各种过渡衔接词语。

第三步：学会在适当的地方设计闪光点，牢记四级作文中常用的闪光句式和用词。

第四步：把握四级作文的命题趋势，练透四级作文的热点话题，这样，在考场上遇到什么题材你都能够思如泉涌、挥洒自如。

第三周

套用高频公式，驾驭三段结构，轻松拿9分

利用实用有效的结构公式，熟练掌握说明现象类、对策方法类、对比分析类、阐释道理类、叙事类、应用类 6 大类高频作文的三段结构模式，考试中碰到什么作文题型都能轻松布局、快速谋篇。

星期一　说明现象类作文结构

一、什么是说明现象类作文

说明现象类作文一般需要考生描述所给文字、图画或图表中反映出的现象的总体情况，对该现象的原因、相关因素或影响进行解释说明，并分析该现象中可能存在的问题或将来的发展趋势。

例（2013 年 12 月（2））

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **the increasing use of the mobile phone in people's life** and then **explain the consequences of overusing it.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

People are crossing the street looking at their cell phones and using walking sticks in order to see.

二、常见结构公式陈列

第一段　描述现象 ①Nowadays/In recent years，概述现象。②现象表现。③In addition/Also，进一步描述现象表现或变化。 **或　概述图表** ①From the chart/graph/table，we clearly learn that 总述现象、变化或问题。②图表中初期的数据或情况。③However，图表中数据或情况的变化。 **或　描述图画** ①From the picture/cartoon，we can see/The picture shows us 概述图画内容。②进一步描述图画内容。③（Funny/Exaggerated as it seems，）this picture describes vividly/this picture reflects/this phenomenon 总体评述现象。	**第一段　描述现象** ①主题句：概括指出现象。 ②扩展句一：现象的具体表现或变化。 ③扩展句二：进一步说明现象的表现或变化。 **或　概述图表** ①主题句：概括图表所反映的总体现象、变化或问题。 ②扩展句一：概述图表中显示的初期的数据或情况。 ③扩展句二：概述图表中数据或情况的变化。 **或　描述图画** ①开头句：概述图画内容 ②扩展句：进一步描述图画内容 ③主题句：总体评述图画所反映的现象
第二段　说明原因 ④Many different reasons contribute to 该现象。/ There are many different factors 决定该现象。⑤Among them，第一点原因或因素 play/plays a critical role。⑥Moreover，第二点原因或因素。⑦Besides，第三点原因或因素。 **或说明影响** ④该现象 has brought great influence on 影响对象。⑤Firstly，第一点影响。⑥Secondly，第二点影响。⑦Finally，第三点影响。	**第二段　说明原因** ④主题句：引出下文对原因的说明。 ⑤扩展句一：说明第一点原因。 ⑥扩展句二：说明第二点原因。 ⑦扩展句三：说明第三点原因。 **或说明影响** ④主题句：引出下文对影响的说明。 ⑤扩展句一：说明第一点影响。 ⑥扩展句二：说明第二点影响。 ⑦扩展句三：说明第三点影响。
第三段　总结评述 ⑧In my opinion / As for me，本人对现象的总结或评述。⑨具体作出评述。⑩进一步评述或提出建议。⑪作出总结。	**第三段　总结评述** ⑧主题句：可能出现的现象的发展趋势或利弊评述，或是本人对现象的看法。 ⑨扩展句一：具体作出评述。 ⑩扩展句二：进一步评述或提出建议。 ⑪结尾句：总结全文（有时可略去）。

三、结构公式真题演示

例 (2013 年 12 月 (2))

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **the increasing use of the mobile phone in people's life** and then **explain the consequences of overusing it.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

People are crossing the street looking at their cell phones and using walking sticks in order to see.

参考范文

The Overuse of Mobile Phones

①As we can see in the picture, people are crossing the street with the help of walking sticks. ②It is not because they are blind but because they are focusing on their mobile phones too much. ③Although exaggerated, the picture vividly describes a phenomenon in our society that people are increasingly dependent on their mobile phones.

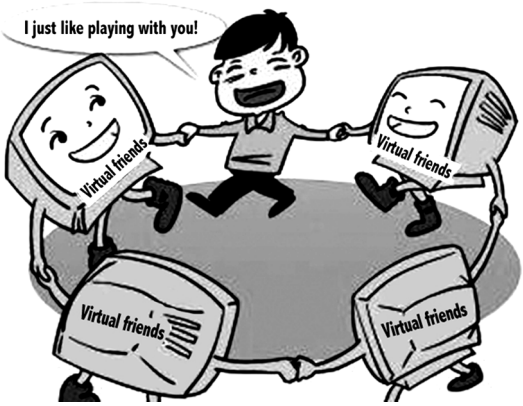
④The increasing use of mobile phones has brought great influence on people's life. ⑤On the one hand, they make our life and work more convenient and efficient. The popularity of mobile phones symbolizes the progress of our society. ⑥On the other hand, it also poses some serious problems. ⑦More and more people immerse themselves in mobile phones, always with their heads low, even when walking, just like those in the picture. They ignore the surroundings around them and communicate less with others.

⑧From my point of view, mobile phones are good gifts modern technology has given us. ⑨Their enormous functions have brought us infinite fun and convenience. ⑩It is decided by how we use them whether they are good or bad.

四、典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Virtual Community.** Your essay should start with a brief description of the picture. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.



练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Traditional Operas Are Gaining Revival on Campus**. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 近年来有越来越多的年轻人对传统戏剧感兴趣。
2. 分析产生这一现象的原因。
3. 谈谈你对此的看法。

参考范文

练习一

Virtual Community

From the cartoon, we can see that a child is playing happily with his virtual

computer friends. This cartoon describes vividly the phenomenon that young people are addicted to virtual network communities. They enjoy doing all kinds of activities in virtual communities such as keeping pets, planting vegetables, making a living, and even getting married.

The reasons for this phenomenon are varied. Among all these reasons, high pressure facing modern people plays a critical role. Virtual network communities provide people a good place to escape from the real problems temporarily. What's more, in network communities people can experience many things they cannot do in real life and have many different lifestyles. Besides, network communities give people more chance to communicate with others and people can make more friends with common interests.

From my point of view, a network community does bring us much fun and relaxation. However, after all, it is a virtual world. If one is immersed in it too much, it might influence his real life. Therefore, I think we should look for more entertainment in our real life instead of putting ourselves in network communities all day.

练习二

Traditional Operas Are Gaining Revival on Campus

In recent years, traditional Chinese operas are gaining revival among young people. There are more young fans for Peking Opera and other local operas. They enjoy singing and talking about traditional operas. The websites and magazines on traditional operas have become more popular.

There are the following reasons behind this phenomenon. Among them, more publicity and education plays a critical role. More and more lectures and performances on traditional operas begin to go into campus, which provides young students with more chances to know the unique charm of traditional operas. Besides, nowadays traditional operas are put into some modern elements, like colorful stage designs and elaborate costumes, which is more appealing to young people.

As to me, it is no doubt that the development of Chinese traditional operas is of very significance. But nowadays most young people, surrounded by pop culture, cannot accept traditional operas in a short time. Therefore, we should take more effective measures to encourage young people to take up Chinese traditional arts.

五、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **The Celebration of Western Festivals**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 现在国内有不少人喜欢过西方的某些节日。
2. 产生这种现象的原因。
3. 这种现象可能带来的影响。

范文	点评
In recent years many Chinese people like to celebrate western festivals. Even some youngsters are paying (1①) as great attention to Christmas (1②) as to our Spring Festival. (2①) In addition, other western festivals, like April Fool's day and Valentine's Day, are very popular among Chinese people. (3) Many reasons contribute to this phenomenon. Among them, relaxing and comfortable atmosphere from western festivals plays a critical role. (2②) Moreover, more and more Chinese people begin to learn English, (4) which provides them with more chances to (5) be exposed to western culture and festivals. (2③) Besides, many businessmen desperately try to boost the atmosphere of foreign festivals to attract more customers. (6) As far as I am concerned, our paying too much attention to western festivals will (7) bring some side effects. The popularity of western festivals (8) to some extent has influenced our traditions. (2④) Therefore, I suggest that people should (9①) not (10) be immersed too much in the western festivals (9②) and ignore Chinese traditional festivals.	(1) 意为“和……一样”，同级比较。 (2) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (3) 引出原因常用句式。 (4) which引导非限制性定语从句。 (5) 意为“暴露于”。 (6) 用于引出个人观点。 (7) 意为“带来负面影响”。 (8) 意为“在某种程度上”。 (9) 连接并列结构。 (10) 意为“过分沉浸在……中”。

星期二　对策方法类作文结构

一、什么是对策方法类作文

对策方法类作文一般需要考生描述提纲中所反映的问题，说明问题的危害和解决问题的必要性，然后针对该问题提出应对策略或解决方法。

例（2010 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay on the topic of **Due Attention Should Be Given to Spelling**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below.

1）如今不少学生在英语学习中不重视拼写。

2）出现这种现象的原因是……

3）为改变这种状况，我认为……

二、常见结构公式陈列

第一段　提出问题 ①提出问题。②问题的重要性或危害。③Besides/Additionally，进一步阐述问题的重要性或危害。④Therefore/No doubt, it is very important/necessary/ urgent for 问题涉及的对象 to learn how to 解决该问题。	**第一段　提出问题** ①主题句：概括提出问题。 ②扩展句一：指出问题的重要性或危害性。 ③扩展句二：进一步阐述问题的重要性或危害。 ④结尾句：承上启下，表达解决问题的必要性，引出解决方法。
第二段　说明方法 ⑤The following ways are effective in 解决问题。/ There are many ways which can be adopted to 解决问题。/ The following factors play an important role in 解决问题。⑥Firstly，第一点方法。⑦Secondly，第二点方法。⑧Finally，第三点方法。	**第二段　说明方法** ⑤主题句：引出问题的解决方法或决定因素。 ⑥扩展句一：说明第一点解决方法。 ⑦扩展句二：说明第二点解决方法。 ⑧扩展句三：说明第三点解决方法。

第三段　总结评述	第三段　总结评述
⑨As far as I am concerned/As for me，本人的观点或选择。⑩具体观点或选择依据。⑪ To conclude/Therefore，总结或建议。	⑨主题句：引出本人对该问题或解决方法的观点或选择。 ⑩扩展句：具体阐述观点或选择依据。 ⑪ 结尾句：作出总结或提出建议。

需要注意的是，有时题目中会明确要求说明问题的危害，这时考生就应该先在第二段详细阐述问题的危害，之后再在第三段说明解决问题的方法或对策。总之，考生要学会根据题目要求灵活处理。

三、结构公式真题演示

例（2001 年 1 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Succeed in a Job Interview**. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 面试在求职过程中的作用。
2. 取得面试成功的因素：仪表、举止谈吐、能力、专业知识、自信、实事求是……

参考范文

How to Succeed in a Job Interview

①It is generally accepted that interview is an important part in one's hunting for a job. ②One's performance in an interview often can decide whether he will be employed. ③ Additionally, the interview provides a good chance for the interviewee to display his or her ability. ④Therefore, it is very necessary for a job hunter to learn how to succeed in a job interview.

⑤The following factors play an important role in a successful interview. ⑥Firstly, before an interview, a job hunter should try to know more about the involved position and company. ⑦Secondly, an interviewee should dress neatly and properly, which can help leave the interviewer a good first impression. ⑧Finally, self-confidence is also very important. With self-confidence, one can show fully his ability.

⑨As far as I am concerned, the importance of successful interview can not overestimated. ⑩ However, opportunities always favor those who are well-prepared. ⑪ Therefore, every job hunter must take the interview seriously and try to make full preparation for it.

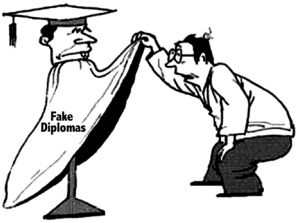
四、典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Build an Ideal Teacher-student Relationship.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **the epidemic of fake diplomas and then explain how to eliminate fake diplomas.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.



参考范文

练习一

How to Build an Ideal Teacher-student Relationship

The relationship between a teacher and a student is very important to both teachers and students. A good teacher-student relationship will make learning enjoyable and efficient as well as make the teacher's job worthwhile. In contrast, a bad relationship will discourage the students from learning and make teaching an unpleasant task.

But how to build an ideal teacher-student relationship? First of all, teacher and student should respect each other, which is the precondition of good relationship. Moreover, the teacher's attitude plays an important role. If the teacher is too strict, he might frighten the student; if the teacher is too permissive, the student may become lazy. As for the student, he should be eager for knowledge and willing to work hard. If he learns from his teacher modestly, he will be able to profit fully from his teacher's teaching.

In conclusion, a good teacher-student relationship needs common efforts from both the teacher and the student. And it can be mutually beneficial. The student gains knowledge eagerly and enjoyably, and the teacher gains satisfaction from his teaching job.

练习二

How to Eliminate Fake Diplomas

The picture reflects vividly the phenomenon that some people use fake diplomas in the job market. Many people have been defeated unfairly by their rivals with fake diplomas but no real abilities, just like the man in the picture. Besides, many illegal dealers make profits by selling fake diplomas. It is high time that we figured out how to fight against fake diplomas.

The following ways can be adopted to eliminate fake diplomas. Firstly, companies can keep detailed information of the diploma and then check its validity with the help of Certificate Authority. Secondly, those who use fake diplomas should be punished severely. Thirdly, companies and other official departments should give more weight to the candidates' competence rather than their diplomas.

As far as I am concerned, fake diplomas is difficult to be eliminated in a short time. With the development of technology, it's harder to identify fake certificates. Therefore, greater attention and efforts should be paid to the cause of fighting against fake diplomas.

五、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Getting to Know the World outside the Campus.** You should write at least 120 words and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 大学生了解社会的必要性。
2. 了解社会的途径（大众媒介、社会服务等）。
3. 你打算怎么做？

范文	点评
Getting to Know the World Outside the Campus It (1) is of great significance for a college student to know the world outside the campus. In this (2) fast-developing "Information Age", college students must (3) keep pace with the progress of the world. (4①) Additionally, by contacting the off-campus world, college students can have chance to get more practical skills. (4②) Therefore, (5) how to know the world	(1) "be of + *n.*" 相当于 "be + *adj.*"。 (2) 复合形容词做定语，意为"迅速发展的"。 (3) 意为"跟上"。 (4) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (5) "疑问词 + 动词不定式"结构充当主语。

outside the campus (6) is worth our attention Many ways can be adopted by our college students to increase our knowledge of the world. (4③) Firstly, mass media, such as radios, televisions, newspapers and the Internet, are a good choice, (7) by which we can (8) be well informed about what is happening. (4④) Secondly, providing volunteer services is an efficient way to contact and know the society. (4⑤) Thirdly, we can take part-time jobs to increase our practical experience. (4⑥) As for me, I will try to create and grasp more chances to contact the society. In my opinion, getting to know the off-campus world is (9①) as important (9②) as improving academic performance. (4⑦) Therefore, I suggest every college student should (10①) not (11) confine himself to the campus (10②) but often go outside.	(6) be worth sth./doing sth. 意为“值得……”。 (7) which在定语从句中充当介词宾语。 (8) inform 是及物动词，意为“通知，告知”，经常用作被动结构“be informed about/of”。 (9) 同级比较结构。 (10) 连接并列结构，意为“不是……而是……”。 (11) 意为“将自己局限于”。

星期三　对比分析类作文结构

一、什么是对比分析类作文

对比分析类作文主要有两种：一种是需要考生对比阐述两种观点或做法及各自的理由，然后表明自己的观点或做法并说明理由；另一种是需要考生对比阐述某事物的利和弊或优点和缺点，继而表明自己的看法或态度。

两种类型结构类似，接下来的结构公式主要针对第一种类型来讲解，至于第二种类型的结构，考生只需在掌握第一种类型结构的基础上进行适当变形即可。

例（2006 年 12 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay on the topic of **On the Spring Festival Gala**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 许多人喜欢在除夕夜观看春节晚会。
2. 有些人提出取消春节晚会。
3. 我的看法。

二、常见结构公式陈列

第一段　观点或选择 A ①简述要讨论的主题，引出对其的不同观点或选择 /When it comes to 谈论主题，there is no complete agreement among people。② Some people think/ prefer to/ choose 观点或选择 A。③观点或选择的第一点理由。④观点或选择的第二点理由。	**第一段　观点或选择 A** ①主题句：提出要讨论的主题，引出两种不同的观点或选择。 ②扩展句一：指出一种观点或选择。 ③扩展句二：阐述该种观点或选择的第一点理由。 ④扩展句三：阐述该种观点或选择的第二点理由。
第二段　观点或选择 B ⑤However，there are many others who 观点或选择 B。⑥In their opinions/ They maintain/they point out 观点或选择 B 的第一点理由。⑦Besides，观点或选择 B 的第二点理由。	**第二段　观点或选择 B** ⑤主题句：转折引出另一种观点或选择。 ⑥扩展句一：阐述该种观点或选择的第一点理由。 ⑦扩展句二：阐述该种观点或选择的第二点理由。
第三段　“我”的观点或选择 ⑧As for me，I agree“我”的观点或选择。/ Weighing up these two arguments/choices，“我”的观点或选择。⑨“我”的第一点理由。⑩“我”的第二点理由。⑪ Therefore/To conclude，作出总结。	**第三段　“我”的观点或选择** ⑧主题句：综合两种观点或选择，表明“我”的观点或选择。 ⑨扩展句一：阐述“我”的第一点理由。 ⑩扩展句二：阐述“我”的第二点理由。 ⑪结尾句：经常是提出建议或作出展望。

三、结构公式真题演示

例（2005 年 12 月）

Directions: For this part，you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay on the topic **Should the University Campus Be Open to Tourists**? You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 名校校园正成为旅游新热点。
2. 校园是否应对游客开放，人们看法不同。
3. 我认为……

参考范文

Should the University Campus Be Open to Tourists?

①When it comes to whether the university campus should be open to tourists, there is no complete agreement among people. ②Some people think that university campus should welcome the visiting of tourists. ③They say that being closed to tourists may make students isolated from the outside world. ④Also, they maintain refusing tourists to violate the spirit of openness.

⑤However, there are many others who do not favor the university campus being open to tourists. ⑥ In their opinions, tourists will destroy the quiet environment and influence students' normal study. ⑦Besides, they argue that too many tourists will add a burden to the security department of the university.

⑧Weighing up these two arguments, I think a university should be an open place. ⑨ By visiting the university campus, tourists can feel the rich cultural atmosphere. ⑩In addition, college students can have more chance to contact the people and the world outside the campus. ⑪ Therefore, the university campus should be ready to embrace the tourists all over the world.

四、典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Is a Good Marriage More Important than a Good Job for a Woman College Student?** You should write at least 120 words and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 随着大学生就业压力的增加，部分女大学生认为干得好不如嫁得好。
2. 也有很多女大学生认为女性不能把婚姻当作捷径，实现理想应该靠个人奋斗。
3. 你的看法。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Should Text Books Be Recycled?** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 一些人认为循环使用教科书非常必要。

2. 另一些人则不赞成循环使用教科书。
3. 你的看法。

参考范文

练习一

Is a Good Marriage More Important than a Good Job for a Woman College Student?

Nowadays, college students, especially women students are facing the increasingly severe employment situation. Some women college students begin to believe that it is more useful to get a good marriage than to get a good job, while others treat this thought with contempt. As to me, I am in favor of the latter opinion.

Of course, a good marriage can help a woman college student release employment pressure. Also, with a good marriage, a woman might enjoy high-quality material life without paying many efforts. But it doesn't mean that a good marriage can ensure a real permanent happiness.

In my view, our happiness and the realization of our ideal should depend on individual struggle. Anyone, especially a woman, can not hang about on others, and marriage should not be regarded as a shortcut to happiness. A good example to illustrate is the higher divorce rate in recent years. Besides, happiness obtained by individual efforts a struggle is real happiness. To conclude, modern women should be the architects of their own fate.

练习二

Should Text Books Be Recycled?

Nowadays there is a heated debate as to whether text books should be recycled. It is no doubt that recycling books brings about many advantages. Above all, recycling textbooks can reduce waste. Thus, we can leave more resources to the next generation. Furthermore, students can buy the recycled textbooks at a low price, which means less stress on those relatively less rich parents.

As every coin has two sides, recycling textbooks has also some disadvantages. For one thing, some of the recycled textbooks are very dirty, so parents worry that a health danger may exist in the recycled textbooks. For another, notes on the recycled textbooks may disturb the next user and draw the user's attention away from the textbooks.

Weighing the advantages and disadvantages, I think textbooks should be recycled under some conditions. Undoubtedly, many people would be in favor of the recycled textbooks if the quality of these textbooks can be guaranteed. But it is worth noting that costs related to the recycling of textbooks should be controlled in an acceptable range.

五、每日佳作赏析

Direction: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Should One Expect a Reward When Doing a Good Deed**? You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 有人做好事期望得到回报。
2. 有人认为应该像雷锋那样做好事不图回报。
3. 你的观点。

范文	点评
Nowadays, (1) different people hold different views about whether or not one should expect a reward when doing a good deed. Some people think that a good deed should be given a certain reward. They say it is agreeable with the rule of fairness. (2①) Also, rewards can stimulate people's enthusiasm to do good deeds. (3) However, there are many others who take Leifeng as a model and be always ready to help others (4) without expecting any reward. Everyone may be in trouble. (5) Only if you help others unselfishly, you can get others' help when you need it. (2②) Besides, they maintain that one can enjoy happiness in doing good deeds, (6) they think, (7) which is the best return. (8) Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer the second one. (2③) First, being happy to help others is one of Chinese people's traditional virtues. (2④) Second, this virtue (9) is of more	(1) 用于引出对某事物的不同观点。 (2) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (3) 转折引出另一种观点。 (4) 意为“不期望任何回报”，介词短语充当状语，注意此处 without 的用法。 (5) 意为“只要”，引导条件状语从句。 (6) 插入语。 (7) which 引导非限制性定语从句。 (8) 用于引出个人观点，weigh up 意为“权衡”。 (9) “be of + *n.*”相当于“be + *adj.*”。

significance for the creation of a harmonious society.（2⑤）To conclude,（10①）it is every citizen's responsibility（10②）to do good deeds without expecting any reward.	（10）固定句式：It is… for sb. +to do sth. 其中 it 是形式主语，不定式短语是实际的主语。

星期四　道理阐释类作文结构

一、什么是道理阐释类作文

道理阐释类作文一般需要考生根据题目要求阐述道理或论点，通过举例等方式对道理和论点展开论述，解释其重要意义或作用，最后再对道理或论点进行总结或强调。从近两年的命题来看，题目指示中往往会给出一句谚语或哲言，需要考生对谚语或哲言进行评论、解释，引出其中的道理，然后展开论述。

例（2011 年 12 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Nothing Succeeds Without a Strong Will** by commenting on the humorous saying, "Quitting smoking is the easiest thing in the world. I've done it hundreds of times." You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

二、常见结构公式陈列

第一段　总述道理 ①There is a famous saying/remark/proverb about 道理的核心："哲言原文"/You may know the saying "哲言原文", which reveals 哲言的道理。/The saying "哲言原文" reveals 道理。②阐述其中的道理或正确性。③进一步强调其中的道理或意义。/The truth of it is deep and profound。	**第一段　总述道理** ①主题句：通过所给哲言或背景引出论述的道理。 ②扩展句一：阐述道理或其正确性。（有时候主题句也可能在这一句） ③扩展句二：进一步阐述或强调其中的道理或意义。
第二段　展开论述 ④There are numerous examples	**第二段　展开论述** ④主题句：引出事例或其他论据，展

supporting this argument. /Many remarkable examples contribute to this argument. ⑤A case in point is 第一个例子。⑥进一步说明例一。⑦For another example，第二个例子。⑧进一步说明例二。	开论述。 ⑤ 扩展句一：列举第一个例子。 ⑥ 扩展句二：进一步说明例一。 ⑦ 扩展句三：列举第二个例子。 ⑧ 扩展句四：进一步说明例二。
第三段　总结道理 ⑨All the above-mentioned tell us that /It is no doubt that/Judging from the evidence offered，we might safely draw the conclusion that 重申观点。⑩ 提出建议或指出注意事项。⑪ To conclude/ Therefore，总结全文。 **或　联系自身** ⑨As a college student/ As a young man/ As for me，阐述自己的情况、感受或做法。⑩进一步阐述自己的情况、感受或做法。⑪总结全文。	**第三段　总结道理** ⑨ 主题句：承接上文，重申道理。 ⑩ 扩展句：提出建议或指出注意事项。 ⑪ 结尾句：总结全文，指出正确的做法或态度。 **或　联系自身** ⑨主题句：联系自身情况，阐述感受或做法，注意结合前面所论述的道理。 ⑩扩展句：进一步阐述自己的情况、感受或做法。 ⑪结尾句：总结全文，再次重申道理，或表达希望，或提出建议。

三、结构公式真题演示

例（2011 年 12 月）

Directions: For this part，you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Nothing Succeeds Without a Strong Will** by commenting on the humorous saying，“Quitting smoking is the easiest thing in the world. I’ve done it hundreds of times.” You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

参考范文

Nothing Succeeds Without a Strong Will

①You might hear the humorous saying “Quitting smoking is the easiest thing in the world. I’ve done it hundreds of times.” ② This is close to suggest that nothing succeeds without a strong will. ③The truth of it is meaningful and instructive，especially to modern young people.

④There are numerous examples supporting this argument. ⑤A case in point is quitting smoking. ⑥Many people have more than one attempt to quit smoking，but they might smoke again after a short time of quitting. From this example，we

can learn if one's will is weak, no matter how many times he tries, he might fail in the end. ⑦For another example, Edison invented the light bulb after hundreds of failures. ⑧It was just a strong will that helped him make the final success.

⑨As for students like us, a strong will is of course very important. ⑩If we give up easily when meeting difficulties, we'll never make any achievements. ⑪It is necessary for us to keep the saying in mind "Where there is a will, there is a way".

四、典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay **commenting on the remark** "Silence is not always gold." You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **The Importance of Preparation to Success** by commenting on Abraham Lincoln's famous remark, "Give me six hours to chop down a tree, and I will spend the first four sharpening the axe." You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

练习一

Silence Is Not Always Gold

Nowadays there are still many people who take "silence is gold" as a doctrine. They believe silence shows one's intelligence and inner beauty, and can reduce the possibility of being involved in troubles. However, indeed, in many cases, silence is not gold, especially in modern society. The following reasons can support the argument.

Undoubtedly, when our lawful rights and interests are invaded, we should not keep silence. At this time, what we should do is to open our mouth to protect ourselves. Moreover, under the increasingly fierce social competition, everyone must learn to show himself. If you always wait in silence, the chances will not come to you automatically. In addition, in face of the immoral and illegal behaviors, your silence is timidity and selfishness.

All mentioned above tell us that silence is not always gold. Instead, sometimes silence not only can not help us but brings a negative effect. Therefore, we should decide when and whether to keep silence according to the special circumstances.

练习二

The Importance of Preparation to Success

A great man ever said, "Give me six hours to chop down a tree, and I will spend the first four sharpening the axe." This saying tells us it is quite necessary to make full preparation before taking an action. The truth of it is deep and profound.

There are numerous examples supporting this argument. A case in point is an athlete. Without adequate preparation, an athlete couldn't become a champion. Before every race, he or she must go through hard training of a long time and make good preparation physically and psychologically. For another example, preparation also plays an important role in hunting a job. Before having an interview, the interviewee needs to know as much information about the company as possible. Finally, as far as the students are concerned, good preparation is absolutely necessary for them to get good results in the exams.

All the above-mentioned tell us that good preparation is the way to success. Therefore, all of us should keep Lincoln's remark in our minds, and be well prepared before doing everything. Only in this way can we have greater chances to make success.

五、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay **commenting on the proverb** "Haste Makes Waste." You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

范文	点评
The proverb "Haste makes waste" has been widely accepted for many years. It reminds us that if we are to achieve our final goal we have to do it in a (1) down-to-earth way. (2) The truth of it is deep and profound.	(1) 意为"脚踏实地"。 (2) 意为"其中蕴涵着深远的道理"。

(3) There are numerous examples supporting this argument. (4) A case in point is the ancient Chinese story of (5) "Helping the shoots grow by pulling". This story proved that the haste caused not only waste but great loss. (6) For another example, some parents and teachers, (7①) in order to improve children's academic performance in a short time, tend to put too heavy burden on children. This, (7②) as a result, brings the children (8) nothing but great pressure. (9) All the above-mentioned tells us that we shouldn't (10) be over anxious for quick results. Everything has its own (11) developing law. Therefore, (12) whatever we do, we should not pay too much attention to the speed and ignore these laws.	(3) 用于引出例证。 (4) 意为"典型的例子"。 (5) 引用"拔苗助长"的故事。 (6) 用于引出另外的例子。 (7) 插入语。 (8) 意为"只是，仅仅"。 (9) 常用于得出结论。 (10) 意为"急于求成"。 (11) 意为"发展规律"。 (12) 引导让步状语从句，意为"无论什么"。

星期五　叙事类和应用类作文结构

一、叙事类作文结构公式

四级写作中涉及的叙事类作文一般是要求考生叙述一个事件发生的经过，如车祸、生病或一次难忘的经历，然后谈谈自己的感受或得到的启示。

例（2003 年 9 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **The Day My Classmate Fell Ill (or Got Injured)**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 简单叙述一下这位同学生病（或受伤）的情况。
2. 同学、老师和你是如何帮助他/她的。
3. 人与人之间的这种相互关爱给你的感受是……

1 常见结构公式陈列

第一段　交代事件背景 ①引出事件背景。②进一步描述背景情况或概述事件的特点。③由背景引出具体事件或说明事件的重要性。	**第一段　交代事件背景** ①主题句：总述事件发生的背景。 ②扩展句一：进一步描述背景情况或概述事件的特点。 ③扩展句二：由背景引出具体事件或说明事件的重要性。
第二段　叙述事件经过 ④Now I still remember clearly 引出事件。/ There is one thing that is still vivid in my mind until now。⑤事件发生的时间和当时的情形。⑥接下来的情况。⑦进一步发展。⑧As a result/ However，事件结果。	**第二段　叙述事件经过** ④主题句：概括引出要讲述的事件。 ⑤扩展句一：交代事件发生的时间和当时的情况。 ⑥扩展句二：描述接下来的情况。 ⑦扩展句三：描述事件的进一步发展。 ⑧结尾句：说明事件的结果或影响。
第三段　谈谈个人感受 ⑨Every time I recall 该事件，“我”的感受或得到的启示。/该事件 left me in deep thought/ gave me a significant lesson. ⑩第一点感受。⑪第二点感受。	**第三段　谈谈个人感受** ⑨主题句：“我”由这件事而引发的感受或得到的启示。 ⑩扩展句一：“我”的第一点感受。 ⑪扩展句二：“我”的第二点感受。

2 结构公式真题演示

例（2005 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay **in honor of teachers on the occasion of Teacher's Day**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 向老师致以节日祝贺。
2. 从一件难忘的事回忆老师的教诲和无私的奉献。
3. 我如何报答老师的关爱……

参考范文

Honor for My Teacher

①The once per year's Teacher's Day will come soon. ②On this special occasion, all of us students should express our respect and love to our teachers. ③And I especially want to take this opportunity to show my thanks to my dearest

teacher, Mr. Li.

④There is one thing that is still vivid in my mind until now. ⑤That was in 2001, when the SARS was on. ⑥Unfortunately, I was in hospital for a severe cold. ⑦ Though the doctor had proved I was just suffering from a normal cold, few students or teachers would like to come to see me. ⑧However, Mr. Li came to see me every day and cared about me until I recovered.

⑨Every time I remind that experience, I feel deeply his unselfish love and devoting spirit. ⑩I must return him with my practical actions. ⑪I will, as he does, give others love and help when they are in trouble. I believe that is what he expects me most.

二、叙事类典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Thanks and Congratulations to My Friend.** You should write at least 120 words but on more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 你好朋友的生日就快到了，祝他或她生日快乐。
2. 从一件难忘的事回忆朋友对你的关爱。
3. 友谊的重要性。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **an eye-witness account of a robbery**. You should write at least 120 words but on more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

假设你在某日某时某地目击了一起抢劫事件，就此写一份见证书。见证书须包括以下几点：

1. 抢劫发生的时间及地点。
2. 你所见到的抢劫情况。
3. 你对抢劫发生原因的分析。

参考范文

练习一

Thanks and Congratulations to My Friend

The birthday of Cao Xiao, my best friend, will come soon. There is no more appropriate time than this for us to express our love and good wishes to her. So

taking this good chance, I want to show my gratitude towards her for her long-time care and understanding.

Now I still remember clearly that experience of illness. It happened in our freshman year, when we had just entered into college for not a long time. I was in hospital because of suffering from an infectious disease. Being worried about being infected, my classmates would not like to go to the hospital to see me. However, Caoxiao volunteered to care about me almost everyday until I recovered completely, which made me feel deep love and concern from a friend.

Every time I remind this and all love she gave, I can understand the real meaning of friendship. I will cherish our friendship all the time. Furthermore, I will, like her, show my care and love to every friend of mine. I believe the word "A friend in need is a friend indeed".

练习二

An Eye-witness Account of a Robbery

I am Li Ming, a college student. A week ago I witnessed a robbery on the street. The crime was so reckless and rampant that I was left a deep impression.

It was at about 5 P. M. , June 15th, when I was walking in a lonely road with few pedestrians around. Suddenly I heard a shout, "Freeze! Return my bag!" I found that a young boy was running ahead, and an old woman was exerting to chase him. Obviously it was a robbery. A few people stopped to watch, but nobody would like to help that old woman. As a result, soon the robber disappeared from our view.

Many factors contributed to the happening of this robbery. The robber's low moral quality and legal consciousness was certainly the main one. But in my opinion, it was more because most people were too indifferent to the crime. If at that time the watchers had lent a hand, I believe, the robber could not have escaped. Therefore, it is high time that we united together to fight against the crimes.

三、应用类作文结构公式

四级写作目前考过的应用类作文包括：建议信、投诉信、竞选演说词、景点介绍和海报。另外，拒绝信、求职信、申请信、祝贺信、倡议书等校园生活中常涉及的应用文体也在大纲的考查范围内。下面列举了 10 种易考的应用类作文结构：

1 建议信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代建议针对的背景事件，说明写信目的；针对该事提出建议，引出对建议的具体阐述。

第二段：具体阐述自己的建议并说明理由。

第三段：表达良好的祝愿和期望。

右下角：署名

例（2001 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a letter. Suppose you are Zhang Ying. Write **a letter to Xiao Wang**, a schoolmate of yours who is going to visit you during the week-long holiday. You should write at least 120 words following the suggestions given below in Chinese:

1. 表示欢迎。
2. 提出对度假安排的建议。
3. 提醒应注意的事项。

参考范文

A Letter to a Schoolmate

June 20, 2001

Dear Xiao Wang,

I am very glad to learn that you will visit me soon. Here I am writing to give you my advice about the arrangement of your coming holiday in Hangzhou.

In my opinion, West Lake should certainly be your first destination since it is such a famous and beautiful place. Then, I suggest you go to Lingyin Temple, Luhe Tower and Yuewang Shrine. Besides, if you have time, Qiandao Lake is also a good site you could not miss. Of course, besides visiting the places of interest, you should taste the local flavor snacks of Hangzhou, like small steamed buns and West Lake vinegared fish. Finally, I must remind you that you should not leave your belongings unattended since there are so many people on the train and at the railway station.

I am sure you will enjoy your visit in Hangzhou. If you have any questions or requirements, do not hesitate to tell me. I am looking forward to seeing you soon.

Truly yours,

Zhang Ying

2 投诉信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：表明自己的身份，说明写信目的，因何事投诉何人或机构。

第二段：具体阐述投诉的内容和投诉的理由。

第三段：提出解决建议并期望尽快解决，表示感谢。

右下角：署名

例（2002 年 1 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **A Letter to the University President about the Canteen Service on Campus**. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

假如你是李明，请你就本校食堂的状况给校长写一封信，内容应涉及食堂的饭菜质量、价格、环境和服务等，可以是表扬，可以是批评建议，也可以兼而有之。

参考范文

A Letter to the University President about the Canteen Service on Campus

Dec. 20, 2009

Dear President,

My name is Li Ming. I am a junior from the Civil Engineering School. I venture to write you a letter to make a complaint about the canteen service of our school.

The focus of the complaint is the poor quality and high price of the food. On one hand, the rice is very hard, the steam bread is often cold, and the vegetables are always overcooked. On the other hand, the price of the food is so high that many poor students are burdened heavily. Under these circumstances, I find it impossible for us students to fully concentrate on the study and enjoy the campus life.

I will be very obliged if you can consider my complaint seriously. I do hope the service of the canteen will be much improved as soon as possible. Thank you for your time and kind consideration.

Sincerely yours,
Li Ming

3 拒绝信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代写信目的，委婉表达自己对邀请、请求等的拒绝，并向对方表示感谢。

第二段：具体阐述拒绝对方的理由。

第三段：希望不会给对方带来不便，向对方表示抱歉和祝愿。

右下角：署名

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **a letter to a company declining a job offer**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 对公司提供职位表示感谢。
2. 解释为何不能接受所提供的职位。
3. 希望予以谅解，并表示对公司的良好祝愿。

参考范文

A Letter Declining a Job Offer

Jan. 12, 2008

Dear Mr. Wang,

I am very sorry to tell you that I have to decline your job offer. To be honest, it would be a very good chance for me to work in your company. However, the current situation doesn't allow me to do this.

This has been a difficult decision for me, but I have to do this. On one hand, I have accepted another job offer before you informed me your decision, which is more in line with my skills and career goals. On the other hand, two hours' commute to your building is really a burden on me. On account of all these, you can understand why I could not accept your offer.

I hope this does not cause you too much inconvenience. Anyway, I do appreciate your kindness to discuss the details of the position with me and give me time to consider your offer. Meanwhile, I wish that your company would find a more suitable talent as soon as possible.

Sincerely yours,
Jane

4 求职信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代写信目的，申请某职位，说明获得招聘信息的来源，表达申请职位的愿望。

第二段：介绍自己的学习经历、能力和特长，证明自己能够胜任工作。

第三段：感谢对方抽出时间和精力，随信附有自己的简历，并愿意提供进一步信息，希望得到面试机会。

右下角：署名

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **a job application letter.** You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 说明获取该招聘信息的渠道，表达想要申请该职位的愿望。
2. 介绍自己的学习经历、专业能力和性格特点。
3. 希望能得到面试机会。

参考范文

A Job Application Letter

June 20, 2008

To whom it may concern,

I am writing to apply for the post of engineer advertised in *China Daily*. I believe my qualifications are ideal match of your requirements.

I will graduate on July 1 of this year from Dongbei University. My major in mechanical engineering and my training in this aspect definitely meet your requirements. In addition, to learning the required courses, I have also accepted training in Professional Training Program at spare time. What's more, I have been an intern in several companies related to my major, which provided me a great deal of experience in computer applications. I believe my training and experience will enable me to perform better than other candidates who are lack of working experience.

I would appreciate your time in reviewing my enclosed resume and if there is any additional information you require, please contact me. I will be very grateful if you can give me a personal interview at your convenience.

Sincerely yours,

Li Hua

5 邀请信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代写信目的，邀请某人参加某项活动，说明活动的时间和地点，正式向对方发出邀请。

第二段：介绍事件的具体安排和对方接受邀请的必要性。

第三段：希望对方能够接受邀请，期待对方的尽快答复。

右下角：署名

例

Direction: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **an invitation letter**. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

下个月你就要大学毕业了，因此你想举办一次同学聚会，特写信邀请你的朋友李亮参加，信件需包含以下内容：

1. 告知聚会的时间和地点。
2. 介绍聚会中的活动内容。
3. 希望对方一定参加。

参考范文

An Invitation Letter

June 15, 2008

Dear Li Liang,

This June 30th I am going to graduate, so I am going to hold a party on Saturday evening in my house. It would be pleasant to have you here.

So interesting will this party be that you can't afford to miss it. For one thing, we can have a big meal, sing the popular songs and play games. For another, it also provides a good opportunity for you to meet many friends that you haven't seen for a long time.

What an important thing it is to get your participation! First, you are my best friend and bring home to me many things. Second, we haven't seen each other for quite a long time and I am eager to see you. The party would not be complete without you!

The party will begin at 7:30 p. m. Is it possible for us to see you at 7:00 on Saturday evening in my house? I do hope you can come.

Sincerely yours,
Sun Li

6 道歉信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代写信目的，因某事向某人道歉，恳请对方接受自己的歉意。

第二段：向对方解释导致自己所犯过失或错误的原因。

第三段：希望能够得到对方的理解和原谅，希望有机会补救，并提出补救措施。

右下角：署名

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **an apology letter** to one of your friends, who yesterday came to see you when you were out. You should write at least 120 word following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 对朋友表示歉意。
2. 解释昨天不在家的原因。
3. 约定时间，再次见面。

参考范文

An Apology Letter

Jan. 24, 2009

Dear Mary,

I am excessively sorry for my absence yesterday when you come to see me during your trip. Now, I am writing you this letter of apology to show my deep regret. Please accept my sincere apology with gratitude.

I hope you will understand me and excuse me for my absence. The reason for my absence was that I had an engagement with some friends and, ignorant of your visit, accompanied them to the cinema. Besides, not until nine o'clock in the evening did I come back. Therefore, it's not in my power to arrange time to meet you.

Naturally, I hope you won't leave the city this week so that I can call on you. I shall be obliged if you will kindly tell me when and where you are at convenient. In that case I can take you to some places that may interest you. I hope to see you soon.

Sincerely yours,
Li Ming

7 倡议书结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代写信目的，倡议的人群和倡议的主题。

第二段：介绍倡议针对对象的具体情况（如需要帮助的人的具体困难）和倡议的具体内容（如捐钱、捐物）。

第三段：提供联系方式，再次发出倡议，呼吁大家参与，并表示感谢。

右下角：署名

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **an open letter** on behalf of the student union asking people to give help to a student who is seriously ill. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 对病人的简单介绍：目前的病情和家庭情况。
2. 目前的困难：无法继续承担医疗费用，需要护理。
3. 希望社会各界捐助，并留下联系方式。

参考范文

Your Help Needed

Nov. 15, 2008

Dear fellow students,

I am writing this letter to call on all the students in our university to do something for Li Ping, one of our schoolmates, who is suffering from the serious disease.

As some of you may know, Li Ping is one of the freshmen of the English Department. She is longing for the bright future like you and me. Unfortunately, last month, she was struck by Leukemia. Now she is hospitalized and in a serious condition. What is worse, Li Ping comes from a poor village family and it is impossible for her family to raise such a large sum of money in such pressing time.

As you see, now Li Ping is in great need of financial aid and daily caring. So it is high time for you to extend your helping hands to her. If you would like to provide your love and care to Li Ping, especially in the form of donation, please call at 12345678 or 23456789 at any time.

Thank you!

Sincerely yours,

The Student Union

8 海报结构公式

标题：活动主题或直接用 Poster

正文：第一段：概括引出活动，交代活动主办单位、活动的时间和地点。

第二段：阐述活动的主要目的和具体安排。

第三段：说明参加活动的条件和方式，交代联系或咨询方式，呼吁大家踊跃参与。

右下角：落款写主办单位名称

例（2006 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a poster **recruiting volunteers**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 校学生会将组织一次暑期志愿者活动，现招募志愿者。
2. 本次志愿者活动的目的、活动安排等。
3. 报名条件及联系方式。

参考范文

Volunteers Needed

The Student Union of our university will organize a volunteer activity in the rural areas during the summer holidays. Now we are recruiting the volunteers.

This activity aims to help the children in rural areas improve their computer and English level, and meanwhile provide a platform for our college students to show and prove our abilities. It is planed to begin on July 5th and last 10 days. The volunteers will be assigned to different country primary schools to teach children how to use the computer and how to learn English well.

Any student who is good at English and computer is warmly welcomed. Those interested are expected to come to the office of the Student Union to fill in an application form before July 1st. Please call 62511123 for further information. We are looking forward to your active participation.

The Students' Union

9 竞选演说词结构公式

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：表达自己的喜悦和荣幸之情，简要介绍自己，表明自己要竞选的职位。

第二段：说明自己具备的条件和优势，证明自己能够胜任。

第三段：承诺当选后会采取哪些措施，表明自己的决心，最后向听众表达祝愿和感谢。

例（2005 年 1 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **a campaign speech** in support of your election to the post of chairman of the student union. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 你认为自己具备了可以胜任学生会主席的哪些条件（能力、性格、爱好等）？
2. 如果当选，你将为本校同学做些什么？

参考范文

A Campaign Speech

Ladies and gentlemen,

I am Wang Lin from the Computer Science Department, and I am honored to stand here to give my speech. I will show you that I am the best candidate to the post of Chairman of the Students' Union.

I have gained a lot of experience and received wide praise from my classmates for my job as the monitor. Moreover, I am warm-hearted and always ready to help others. Besides, I am good at organizing activities and have experience in holding contests and sports meetings.

Looking into the future, I will try my best to serve my fellow students if I am lucky enough to be the president of the Students' Union. On one hand, I will organize more activities to color our campus life. On the other hand, I'll reform the Student Union, changing it from a problem-solving one into a service-providing one. And more channels will be opened for our students to voice opinions and needs.

I, Wang Lin, am worth your trust. Don't hesitate to vote for me. Thank you!

10 景点介绍结构公式

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：向大家表示欢迎，简要介绍自己的身份和任务，并表达自己的喜悦和荣幸之情。

第二段：具体介绍景点的内容和特点以及具体的行程安排。

第三段：提醒相关注意事项，并表示如有疑问欢迎咨询。祝愿大家玩得愉快，感谢大家的倾听。

例（2004 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition entitled **A Brief Introduction to a Tourist Attraction**. You should write at least 120 words according to the following guidelines:

Your role: a tour guide

Your audience: a group of foreign tourists

Your introduction should include:

1. Some welcoming words
2. The schedule for the day
3. A description of the place the tourists will be visiting (e. g. a scenic spot or a historical site, etc.)

You should make the introduction interesting and the arrangements for the day clear to everybody.

参考范文

A Brief Introduction to a Tourist Attraction

Ladies and gentlemen,

Welcome to China and thank you for your trusting our travel agency. I am Lisa. It's my pleasure to be your guide.

The following is the schedule of the day. In the morning, the first spot we are going to visit is the Great Wall, the grandest fortification in ancient China. Then I will take you to the Ming Tombs, which is one of the best-preserved tombs in China and the last home for 13 emperors in Ming Dynasty. In the afternoon, we will go to the Summer Palace, the royal park for ancient Chinese emperors. That's the end of our visiting of today.

By the way, please bring a plastic bag with you to hold the rubbish you will make so as to protect our environment. If any of you have questions, please feel free to ask me at any time. I hope that you will enjoy your day. Thank you very much for your attention.

四、应用类典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **a letter in reply to a friend's inquiry** about applying for admission to your college or university. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 建议报考的专业及理由。
2. 报考该专业的基本条件。
3. 应当如何备考。

练习二

Direction: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **a letter of gratitude** expressing your thanks for your friend. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

一位朋友在你准备四级考试的过程中给了你一些好的建议，写一封信表示感谢。

1. 简单说明事因。
2. 说明对方的帮助对你的意义。
3. 表示感谢并希望有回报机会。

练习三

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **a poster**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 校学生会将组织参观历史展览，现接受报名。
2. 本次活动的目的、活动安排等。
3. 报名条件及联系方式。

练习四

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **A Complaint Letter to the Manager**. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and you should base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

假如你是李明，陪朋友去买纪念品，但服务员态度恶劣，请你就服务员的态度给经理写一封抱怨信。

参考范文

练习一

A Letter in Reply to a Friend

March 18, 2011

Dear John,

I am very glad to know that you are going to apply for admission to our university. Here I will try to give you some suggestions about your application. In

my opinion, English major is a good choice. On one hand, that is the subject you have been good at and interested in. On the other hand, our English department has excellent teachers and modern teaching facilities.

As to the requirements for applying for the English major, I would like to suggest that you pay more attention to spoken English. If you don't make a good performance in oral test, you maybe have to choose another major. A good mental state would be necessary if you want to leave a good impression on the examiners. In addition, you should do more model tests when making preparation for the test. I am sure you will succeed in the exam if you follow my advice.

Please inform me if there is something else I can do for you. I am looking forward to meeting you on our campus.

Sincerely yours,
Yao Ming

练习二

A Letter of Gratitude

April 15, 2011

Dear Pang Li,

I am now writing these few lines to extend my sincere gratitude for your suggestions concerning my preparations for the CET-4. I'd like you to know how much your valuable suggestions meant to me. Your suggestions not only offer me a lot of study methods which enable me to make a full-range preparation, but also lead me to the great success in passing the CET-4. I shall ever remember your suggestions as the most valuable advice.

I hope to have the opportunity of reciprocating. Lately, I will not be very busy. I will feel very honored and pleased if you have time to have a dinner with me. Would you kindly let me know what time you are at convenience? I am looking forward to seeing you next time!

Again, I would like to express my thanks to you. Please accept my gratitude and give my kind regards to your family. Looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours truly,
Wang Nan

练习三

A Visit to the Historical Exhibition

Under the auspices of the Student Union of our university, a visit to the historical

exhibition will be made next Sunday. We will go to the Capital Museum and attend the exhibition of Ancient China Civilization. This activity aims to enhance the understanding of the bright civilization of our great country. The arrangements are as followed.

This activity is arranged to begin at 8:00 am and end at 4:00 am. First, we will see a digital movie about the history of China, which lasts about half an hour. Then we will see many priceless relics following the explanation of the guide. Besides, we can look around the shops in the museum and buy what we like.

Anyone who is interested in history is warmly welcomed. You are expected to come to the office of the Students Union to fill in an application form. Please call at 3489565 for further information. I am looking forward to your active participation.

The Student Union

练习四

A Complaint Letter to the Manager

May 28, 2011

Dear Manager,

I am a college student from Peking University. I venture to write you a letter about your bad service.

The focus of the complaint is the impatience of your shop-assistant whose badge number was 15. For one thing, the assistant turned a deaf ear to our request and walked away. For another, she murmured in a sarcastic manner that my friend was foolish in making such a request. Under these circumstances, I found it so unbearable to face such an awkward situation. Honestly speaking, the products in your shop are of good quality. But you should make great efforts to look into your service and take steps to prevent a similar recurrence of such offensive behavior in the future. All in all, there is still much room for improvement.

I do hope you can pay great attention to my complaints. Thank you for your time and kind consideration.

Sincerely yours,
Yan Ni

五、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **a letter of apology** to your teacher. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 表达自己对未能按时交论文一事的歉意。
2. 说明未能按时交论文的原因。
3. 表示自己将尽快补交论文并保证以后按时交作业。

范文	点评
March 10, 2011 Dear Mr. Wang, (1) I am writing you this letter to apologize for my failing to hand in the paper on time. I am very sorry for (2) the inconvenience brought by my delay. (3) Please accept my sincere apology with gratitude. (4) The reason for my delay was that I was knocked down by a cold. (5①) Moreover, I had a fever and was too weak to write a single word. (5②) Therefore, it's not (6) in my power to finish the paper on time. I hope you could understand me and excuse me for my delay. I will (7) do my utmost to finish my paper and hand it in (8) as soon as possible. (5③) In my opinion, the importance of punctuality (9) cannot be emphasized too much, so I assure you that I will hand in my homework on time from now on. Sincerely yours, Yu Ming	(1) 道歉信开头常用句式。 (2) 意为“由……带来的不便”。 (3) 意为“请接受我诚挚的歉意”，表示道歉的常用句式。 (4) 列举原因常用句式。 (5) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (6) 意为“在能力范围之内”。 (7) 意为“尽最大的努力”。 (8) 意为“尽可能快”。 (9) 意为“再怎么强调也不为过”，表示非常重要。

星期六　一周复习效果检验

Test 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **the problem of information security** and then **explain how to strengthen information security**. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **the popularity of network literature** and then **explain the advantages and disadvantages of network literature**. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled

Rush for Postgraduate Study based on the statistics provided in the table below. Please give a brief description of the table first and then make comments on it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Year	Number of Candidates in X Province
2000	1600
2002	5600
2004	12000
2006	36000
2008	52000

Test 4

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Act Early** by commenting on famous proverb "Early Bird Catches the Worm". You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay on the topic of **Talent-search Show on Campus.** You should start your essay with a brief description of the phenomenon and make comments on it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 6

Direction: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **an apology letter** to your brother and explain why you cannot attend his graduation ceremony. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 7

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay about **a quarrel you witnessed.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 8

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether we should explain or not when facing rumors.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

参考范文

Test 1

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段由图画引出信息安全问题并描述其主要表现；第二段说明信息安全事故可能导致的危害；第三段说明应该如何解决信息安全问题。

Information Security

The purpose of the picture is to show us the problem of information security. With our stepping into information society, computer crimes keep rising and information security incidents occur frequently. The hackers like the man in the picture emerge on the Internet in an endless stream.

It is very clear that information security incidents are bringing great harm to the victims, including government departments, organizations, institutions and individuals. First of all, government may suffer from national security threats. With the help of computers and the Internet, spies and some weak-minded officials can disclose state secrets via more advanced skills. Furthermore, companies may lose important trade secrets; the public's and users' confidence will be damaged.

Considering seriousness of the problem, we should pay more attention to information security. Firstly, technology plays a vital role in solving this problem. Since no system can ever be absolutely safe, both prevention and detection techniques are necessary to information security management. Finally, organizations and companies should promote the awareness on information security to its staff. Only in this way can information security be guaranteed.

Test 2

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画简要介绍网络文学的流行；第二段分析网络文学的优点；第三段分析网络文学的缺点；第四段谈谈个人对网络文学的看法。

Network Literature

From the picture, we can see a man who is writing on the Internet. Nowadays there are many web writers like him. With the widespread of Internet, network literature, as a new literature form, has gained much popularity.

Compared with traditional literature, network literature has many advantages. Above all, it is easier to become popular, whether in terms of its form or its contents. In addition, with Internet as its media, network literature has a stronger expressive force and a quicker spreading.

As every coin has two sides, network literature has also some disadvantages. For one thing, the creation of network literature goes towards fawning on common,

of which we can find limited classic ones. For another, the administration and supervision on network literature are still not very sound and effective.

Weighing up the advantages and disadvantages of network literature, I think it is a beneficial supplement to traditional literature. Undoubtedly, Internet, as the media of network literature, provides a wider space for spreading and developing literature. But it is worth noting that many network literature works are written in a rough way. Therefore, people should have a good selection when reading literature works on line.

Test 3

框架搭建：由图表内容题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段根据图表简要描述近几年报考研究生人数的变化；第二段说明报考研究生人数发生变化的原因；第三段谈谈个人对考研热的看法。

Rush for Postgraduate Study

According to the table, it is clear that there is a sharp increase in number of postgraduate candidates in X Province from 2000 to 2008. In 2000, there were only 1,600 candidates participating in the exam. However, 2 years later, the number increased to 5,600, and by 2008 it has reached 52,000.

There are many reasons accounting for the great change. Firstly, the tough competition in the job market is an important one. The enrollment expansion of universities places a great pressure on the job market, which stimulates many students to turn to further education. Secondly, many students with equivalent education background to college graduates are allowed to apply for postgraduate study. Finally, the society has a greater demand for the postgraduates with the economic development.

As far as I am concerned, college students should take full account before deciding to further their education. For one thing, postgraduate study does not necessarily ensure a bright future. For another, it's a tough process to prepare for the exam for postgraduate study and not everyone can stick it out.

Test 4

框架搭建：由标题和题目内容可知，本文应为一篇道理阐释类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段解释“早起的鸟儿有虫吃”这一谚语包含的道理；第二段论证其中的道理；第三段重申该谚语中的道理，提出建议或期望。

Act Early

The proverb "Early bird catches the worm" has been generally accepted. It tells us that if you act early or before anyone else, you will have an advantage and be successful. The truth of it is self-evident.

There are numerous examples supporting this argument. A case in point is that students usually make two to three years' preparation before their overseas study. This is close to suggest an early preparation increases the possibility of success. For another example, DHL, an express company, was the first company in its field to extend its business to China. The proverb "Early bird catches the worm" works on DHL which now holds a larger market share.

Judging from the evidence offered, we might safely draw the conclusion that the earlier one takes action, the more chances one will succeed. But what is worth noting is that we should set a correct goal before our early preparation. To conclude, we should take the idiom "Early bird catches the worm" as our guidance in the daily life and work.

Test 5

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述大学校园内举办"选秀"活动 的情况；第二段说明校园"选秀"活动带来的影响；第三段谈谈个人对"选秀"活动的看法。

Talent-search Show on Campus

In recent years, there has been a talent-search craze on college campus. Various talent-search shows, like "Campus Superstar Competition", "Happy Boy", have emerged one after another on campus. Moreover, these activities are almost the copies of those social talent shows from the form to the contents.

As everyone sees, talent shows are bringing great influence on college students. Above all, these activities enrich students' after-class life and provide a good stage for students to show themselves. Also, by attending these activities, college students can improve their abilities in social communication. However, talent shows have brought some negative effects. For instance, most activities have monotonous form and lack creativity, which influence to some degree the whole culture atmosphere on campus.

From my point of view, college students need cultural and amusement activities like talent shows, but the overall quality of these activities should be improved.

The activity organizers should increase the activity feature and take full account. With the improvement in quality, I believe, talent shows will go on playing an important role in college students' life.

Test 6

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一封道歉信，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段说明道歉缘由（没能参加弟弟的毕业典礼）并向弟弟表达真诚的歉意；第二段详细解释没能参加典礼的原因；第三段再次表达歉意并提出弥补建议。

An Apology Letter

July 5, 2011

Dear brother,

I am excessively sorry that I can't attend your graduation ceremony as I have promised. Now, I am writing you this letter to show my deep regret. Please accept my sincere apology with gratitude. I hope you will understand me and excuse me for my being absent.

I will be very grateful if you are kind enough to listen to my explanation. The reason why I can't attend your graduation ceremony is that I have already been arranged to attend a meeting next week in Nanjing. I have no way out because the things I have to do are of great importance to my company. Therefore, it's not in my power to comply with your request.

Naturally, I would like to show my apology in person next month. I shall be obliged if you will kindly write and tell me when and where you will meet me next month. Once again, I would like to express my sincere apology for any inconvenience caused. Hope you can accept my apologies and understand my situation.

Sincerely Yours,
Liu Yuan

Test 7

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇叙事类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述吵架的背景，引出吵架当天的情景；第二段具体叙述吵架的原因、经过及结果；第三段谈谈个人感受以及从这次吵架中吸取的教训。

A Quarrel I witnessed

Weeks ago, I witnessed a quarrel between my two roommates. It shocked me that two good friends fell out just for a very trifling matter.

It was in the morning at a weekend, when I was washing my face in the bathroom. Suddenly I heard Xu Lan and Wu Xin shouting at each other. I hurried to come out to see what happened. It turned out that the noise of Wu Xin's closing the door waked Xu Lan. Xu Lan thought Wu Xin deliberately closed the door heavily. Wu Xin didn't admit her fault. So they had a bitter quarrel. Though later they stopped quarreling under our persuasion, neither of them would like to apologize.

Such a quarrel leaves me to think a lot about dormitory harmony. If either Xu Lan or Wu Xin can be a little tolerant or take a better way to express herself, this quarrel, I think, can be avoided easily. It is no doubt that a harmonious dormitory life benefits all the members, but it needs our common efforts to build it.

Test 8

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段引出应对流言蜚语的两种方式：申辩和保持沉默；第二段对比阐述两种方法各自的理由；第三段表明自己更倾向于哪种方法并说明理由。

Explain or Keep Silence?

Nowadays, it is very difficult to avoid rumors and slanders completely, especially to those celebrities. Some people maintain that when one suffers from rumors, he should come out to make explanation and defense for himself, while others argue that the best way is to keep silence. As to me, I am in favor of the former opinion.

Of course, sometimes silence can help reduce people's interest in rumors. Also, after a period of time, rumors might disappear naturally in the face of the truth. But it is worth noting that in most cases, silence doesn't work in getting rid of rumors but increase people's uncertainty and suspicion.

From my point of view, facing rumors, one should stand up bravely to defend himself rather than say nothing to them. The following reasons can support my argument. First, it is your explanation that helps others learn the truth. Second, rumors often go round very quickly, and your silence will foster its further spread.

第四周

熟悉段落构成，掌握基本功能句，确保11分

熟悉四级写作中常见的10大段落类型（如概述现象段、描写图表段、说明原因段、提出观点段等）的句型构造，学会撰写各类段落的基本功能句。这样，考场上无论碰上何种提纲，考生都能做到快速成段、自然过渡。

星期一　如何写概述现象段和描写图表段

一、段落基本句型构造

1 概述现象段

概述现象段通常出现在说明现象类作文的第一段，其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话概括现象的总体情况，这是段落的主题句；然后具体描述现象的突出表现或具体变化，以支持主题句。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay entitled **Digital Age**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 如今数字化产品得到了越来越广泛的使用，举例说明。
2. 数字化产品的使用对人们工作、学习和生活产生的影响。

第一段：概述现象段

①Nowadays, digital products are extremely popular and play a very critical role in modern society. ②Taking a look around, you can find too numerous examples

to mention individually, and the best one may be the computers. ③In addition, other digital products, like digital camera, digital TVs, etc., have gradually become indispensable parts of our life.

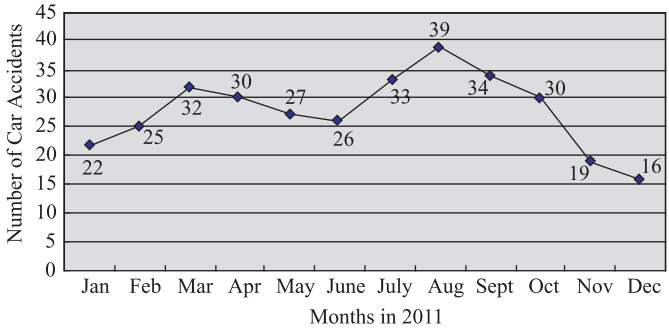
2 描写图表段

描写图表段通常出现在图表阐释类作文的第一段，其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话概括图表所反映的总体现象、变化或问题，这是段落的主题句；然后用2~3句话具体描述图表中数据的对比或变化情况，以支持主题句。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition based on the graph below. The suggested title is: **Car Accidents Declining in Walton City**. Remember that your composition must be written according to the following outline:

1. 描述图表中反映的车祸发生率的变化。
2. 分析该市车祸发生率下降的原因。
3. 你对该市今年车祸发生率走势的预测。



第一段：描写图表段

①As is indicated in the above graph, the rate of car accidents in Walton City rises and falls with the change of months. ②From January to March, the number of car accidents rises from 22 to 32, and then drops to 26 in the next three months. After that, it climbs up again to 39, increasing by 50%. ③However, from then on, the curve descends all the way to the lowest point, 16 to be exact.

二、各类功能句常规写法

1 概述现象段

1）概述现象

① **Nowadays, there follows a craze for** diplomas and certificates in our society.
现在，社会上流行一股文凭热。

② **Nowadays, we often hear** people's complaints about dishonesty.
现在，我们经常听到人们抱怨不诚实的现象。

③ **With the development of** market economy, fake commodities **are becoming a more and more serious problem**.
随着市场经济的发展，假冒伪劣商品越来越成为一个问题。

④ **In the past two decades**, China **has experienced an alarming increase in** teenage smoking.
在过去的20年中，中国青少年的吸烟人数有了惊人的上升。

⑤ **In recent years, there has been a dramatic increase in the number of** school dropouts in the countryside.
近年来，农村辍学人数急剧上升。

⑥ **As** the socialist market economy in China **is expanding**, education **is becoming more** closely related to the market.
随着社会主义市场经济在中国的发展，教育与市场的关系正变得越来越密切。

⑦ **The early 90's saw an unprecedented tide of** the workers flooding into big cities.
90年代初期出现了涌入城市的民工大潮，其势头前所未有。

⑧ **In the past three decades, China has witnessed dramatic improvement in** the living standard of people.
在过去的30年里，中国人的生活水平有了巨大的改善。

⑨ **Ever since the beginning of** market economy, advertisements **has become an essential part of** our daily life.
从市场经济初期开始，广告就已经成为我们日常生活中必不可少的一部分。

⑩ **Nowadays many** young people **prefer to** stay single **instead of** getting married.
现在，许多年轻人宁愿单身而不愿意结婚。

⑪ **With** banks' **more focus on** college market, **an increasing number of** college students have applied for a credit card and begun to consume by it.
随着银行对大学市场给予更多的关注，越来越多的大学生申请并开始使用信用卡。

⑫ **As more people focus on** health diet, green food has begun to **draw more and more attention from the public**.
随着更多的人开始关注健康饮食，绿色食品已经引起了越来越多公众的注意。

2）具体描述现象表现

① **Nowadays, we can easily find** all kinds of computers **everywhere, especially in** large cities.
现在，我们随处都可以很容易地找到各种各样的计算机，尤其是在大城市。

② **In the old days** only national leaders visited foreign countries. **Nowadays** mutual visits between nations have been extended to the provincial or municipal level.
过去只有国家领导人之间会互访，现在国家间的互访已经扩展到省、市级别。

③ Grain, **which used to be** the main food of most people in China, **is now** playing a less important role in people's diet.
谷物过去是中国大多数人的主要食物，如今在人们的饮食结构中所占的地位正在下降。

④ **On the other hand**, the consumption of high-nutrition food such as milk and meat has increased rapidly.
另一方面，人们对牛奶、肉类等高营养食物的消费却迅速增加。

⑤ Sports are **so** popular on campus **that** they have become an indispensable part of college education.
体育运动在校园里非常受欢迎，已经成为大学教育不可或缺的一部分。

⑥ **Almost every day we can see** flashing fire engines rushing through the streets with their horns blaring.
几乎每一天我们都能看到灯光闪动的消防车鸣着笛冲过街道。

⑦ Miss Li's **case is not unique**, **and now more and more** city adults spend their leisure time trying to improve themselves at night school or college.
李小姐的情况并不是特例，现在越来越多城里的成年人利用他们的业余时间参加夜校来提高自己。

⑧ **We are surprised to learn that** a pop singer can make over 100 thousand for one performance, **while** an average farmer may take several years to earn that much.
我们很惊奇地发现，一个流行歌手一次演出就能够赚到 10 万块，而一个普通的农民需要几年才能赚到这些钱。

⑨ **What amazes us most is that** some fake commodities are quite similar to the real ones.
让我们感到非常惊奇的是，一些假货造得和真货很像。

⑩ The schoolbags on their shoulders are getting **heavier and heavier**, and the hours

spent on homework **longer and longer**.
他们肩上的书包越来越重，他们花在作业上的时间越来越多。

⑪ **Nowadays there are more and more** secondhand goods in the market, **such as** secondhand books, furniture, appliances, cars, **and so on**.
现在，市场上有越来越多的二手商品，例如二手书、二手家具、二手电器、二手车等。

2 描写图表段

1）概述图表

① **As is indicated/ revealed/ showed in the (above) graph**, there have been some obvious changes in the diet of the Chinese.
正如图表所示，中国人的饮食结构已经发生了明显的变化。

② **According to the figures given in the table**, online shopping is becoming more and more popular/gaining more and more popularity.
根据表格中给出的数据，网上购物正变得越来越流行。

③ **As the survey results show**, life expectancy in developing countries has increased a lot in the past 3 decades.
正如调查结果显示，在过去的30年里，发展中国家的人均寿命已经提高了很多。

④ **This two charts give us a general illustration of** the distribution of family income in country A and country B.
这两张图为我们概括地描述了A、B两国的家庭收入分配情况。

⑤ **It can be seen from the statistics that** the world's population is growing steadily at a tremendous rate.
从统计数据可以看出，世界人口正在稳定地持续大幅度增长。

⑥ **From the above chart, we can see clearly that** the enrollment of Chinese universities has been on the rise in recent years.
从上图我们可以很明显地看出，近年来中国大学的招生人数一直在增长。

2）概述图画

① **As is described / showed in the picture,** a group of students are raising their hands to give answers to the question in a joyful and active way.
正像图画中描述/显示的那样，一群兴高采烈的学生正在积极地举手回答问题。

② **As is vividly depicted in the picture,** lots of people suffer from "smart phone addiction".
正如图片中生动描述的那样，许多人患有"智能手机成瘾症"。

③ **As can be seen from the picture,** a girl receiving the university admission notice

is stopped by her father.
正像我们从图画中所看到的，一个女孩收到了大学录取通知书，却被自己的父亲阻止。

④ **Just as is revealed in the picture above,** many people are so addicted to the Internet that they neglect the real world.
正如上图所揭示的那样，许多人十分沉迷网络，达到忽略现实世界的地步。

⑤ **The purpose of the picture is to show us** the importance of cooperation.
这幅图的目的是为了给我们展示合作的重要性。

⑥ **We can see from this picture that/ From the picture above, we can see that** two teachers are talking about how to get students' attention.
从这幅图中我们可以看到，两个老师正在就如何引起学生的注意展开讨论。

⑦ **The cartoon vividly illustrates/ demonstrates the fact that** today's children lack independence.
这幅卡通画生动地揭示了如今的孩子们缺乏独立性的现实。

⑧ **The picture describes a prevailing phenomenon that** some people simply go online for the answer to everything, and neglect the importance of independent thinking.
图片描述了一个当前流行的现象：一些人一味地通过上网寻找解答任何问题的方法，忽视了独立思考的重要性。

⑨ **In this picture, we are surprised to see** a bird is standing firmly and erectly against the snowstorm.
在图画中我们惊奇地看到，一只小鸟在暴风雪中屹立不动。

⑩ **Looking at the picture, we can't help thinking of** more and more serious problem of food safety.
这幅图片让我们不禁想到越来越严重的食品安全问题。

⑪ **The drawer reminds us of a common social phenomenon.**
图画的作者提醒了我们一个普遍的社会现象。

⑫ **This picture sets me thinking for a long time.**
这幅图让我思考良多。

3）具体描述图表数据

① **From** 1997 **to** 2002, **there is a rapid/dramatic/abrupt rise/increase in** the use of the computers.
从 1997 年到 2002 年，在计算机的使用方面有了快速/巨大/急剧的增加。

② **During** the past decade, the price of computers **has declined /decreased /fell / dropped markedly**.
在过去的 10 年里，计算机的价格明显下降了。

③ **Only** 5 years **later, the number increased to** 100,000.

仅仅5年，这个数字就上升到了10万。

④ **The figure has nearly doubled/tripled**, **as against that of** last year.
与去年相比，这个数字几乎上涨到去年的两倍/三倍。

⑤ **The number is 3 times as much as that of** last year.
数量是去年的3倍。

⑥ **According to the figures given in the table**, **since** 1996, **the amount of** money spent on food **had decreased gradually**, **accounting for** 35 **percent in** 2000.
根据表格中的数据，从1996年起，人们在食品上的消费开始逐渐下降，到2000年已经下降到了35%。

⑦ **From the chart**, **an increasing number of people would rather** choose self-help tour **than** follow a tour group.
从图表中来看，越来越多的人宁愿选择自助游而不愿跟团旅行。

⑧ **In** 1995, **the number of** people traveling abroad **was only** about 10,000. **However**, 5 **years later**, **it increased to** nearly 40,000, **and by 2005**, **the number had reached** over 120,000, **which was** more than ten **times than** ten years ago.
1995年，出国旅行的人数只有1万人，然而，5年以后，这个数字就增加到了4万，到了2005年，出国旅行的人数已经超过了12万，比10年前的10倍还要多。

⑨ **The proportion of** grain which used to be the main food of the Chinese people **has decreased by** 4%. **In contrast**, **the proportion of** milk and meat in people's diet **has increased**.
过去在中国人的饮食中占据主体地位的谷物的比例下降了4%，与之形成对比的是，牛奶和肉类在人们饮食中的比例却增加了。

⑩ **By comparison with/Compared with** 2 years ago, **this figure has increased from** less than 1.5 million **to** nearly 3.4 million.
与两年前相比，这一数字已经从不到150万增加到了将近340万。

⑪ **It is obvious that there is a sharp rise in** TV-watchers **from** about 60 thousand **to** 90 thousand, **while a great fall in** filmgoers **during the same period**.
很显然，看电视的人数迅速增加，从大约6万人上升到9万人，然而，在同一时期看电影的人数则有了大幅度的下降。

⑫ An average family in country A has to spend **87%** of its yearly income on housing and food **while** a family in country B only spends **58%**.
A国普通家庭年收入的87%都用于住房和食品，而在B国这一部分的消费只占58%。

⑬ **As indicated by the date given in the graph**, life expectancy in developing countries **has climbed from** about 40 years **in** the 1960's **to** about 60 **in** the 1990's, **increasing by** 20 years **within** 3 decades.

正像图表中数据所显示的，发展中国家的人均寿命已经从20世纪60年代的40岁攀升到20世纪90年代的60岁，也是说，在30年间提高了20岁。

⑭ **It can also be seen, as a sharp contrast, that there was a sharp drop in** infant mortality, **by** 15%, **from** 250 deaths per 1000 births **to** about 100 deaths per 1000 **during the same period**.

我们也能够看出，与此形成鲜明对比的是，同一时期的婴儿死亡率却下降了15%，从每1000个婴儿中死亡250个下降到大约100个。

三、典型段落操练

要求：请撰写下列作文，注意其中概述现象段和描写图表段的写法。

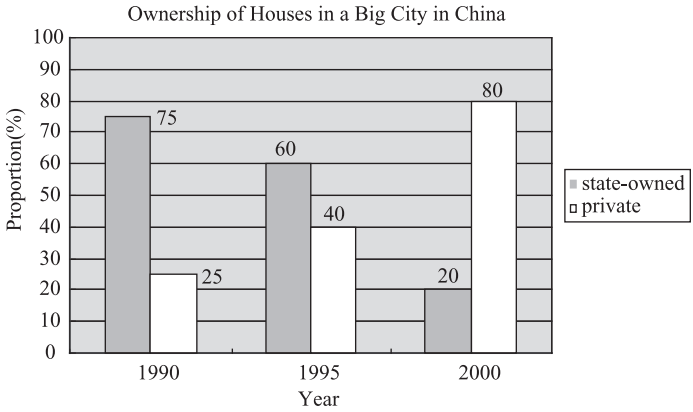
练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Losing Weight**. You should write at least 120 words and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 越来越多的人，尤其是女性热衷于减肥。
2. 分析人们减肥的原因。
3. 盲目减肥可能会产生副作用。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Changes in the Ownership of Houses.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the chart and the outline given in Chinese below:



1. 根据上图描述该市住房产权的变化。
2. 分析产生这些变化的原因。
3. 说明这些变化对个人和社会产生的影响。

参考范文

练习一

Losing Weight

第一段：概述现象段

Nowadays, more and more people, especially young female, are trying to lose unwanted weight. The number of people taking part in all kinds of fat farms or fitness clubs has been on the rise in recent years. Besides, more and more people are joining the army of being on diet. In order to keep fit, many young girls eat only one meal every day, and some even do not eat anything.

第二段：说明原因段

There are three main reasons behind this craze in losing weight. Firstly, as we see, most young people, especially the women, want to have a better figure. They try to lose weight to look more beautiful. Secondly, quite a few people want to reduce excessive fat for their health since obesity is often very harmful to health. Thirdly, still some people are out of work need, the majority of whom are actors and actresses. In order to meet the role requirements, sometimes they have to lose much weight in a short time.

第三段：说明害处段

However, dieting might bring great negative effects on people. For one thing, quite a lot of people don't really need dieting to keep health, and they diet just because they want to keep slim. For them, dieting not only is useless but also might damage their health. For another, some people lack enough knowledge on how to diet scientifically. As a result, they are likely to suffer from malnutrition. Considering the serious damage of unhealthy dieting, we need professional guidance in dieting.

练习二

Changes in the Ownership of Houses

第一段：描写图表段

According to the chart, we can see clearly that in the past decade the ownership of houses in this city has changed greatly. In 1995, the proportion of state-owned houses is far higher than that of private houses, taking up respectively

75% and 25%. However, 5 years later, the proportion of private-owned houses rose to 40%, and by 2000, it has reached 80%. It is obvious that more and more individuals have owned their private houses.

第二段：说明原因段

The following three reasons can account for the rapid growth of private housing ownership. Firstly, state subsidies for public housing are gradually eliminated. That is to say, without the housing subsidy, people are encouraged to buy their own private houses. Secondly, with the rapid development of economy, people's income has risen significantly. Thirdly, various forms of mortgage loans with reasonable interest permit people to improve their housing condition in advance. As a result, people gradually have a strong desire to own a house of their own.

第三段：说明影响段

The change of the ownership of houses exerts a positive influence on the society. For one thing, this market-driven housing policy can lead to better resource allocation. For another, since more and more citizens are using mortgage and installments to buy their apartments, they form a new industry, broad the business of banks, and promote the whole economy.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Green Food.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 近年来，“绿色食品”变得越来越流行。
2. 分析这种现象产生的原因。
3. 你对该现象的看法。

范文	点评
As more and more people focus on health diet, green food has begun to (1) draw more and more attention by the public. In recent years, the market demand for green food has (2) increased dramatically, and all kinds of green food have (3) emerged in an endless stream. (4) Why does green food become so popular in China? (5①) Above all, (6) compared with ordinary food, green	(1) 意为“引起越来越多的公众注意”。 (2) 意为“显著地增加”。 (3) 意为“层出不穷”。 (4) 引出原因时常用的句式。 (5) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (6) 过去分词短语做状语，

food is healthier, safer and more nutritious. (5②) Moreover, nowadays, many vegetables are polluted because of the usage of agricultural chemicals, (7) while green food is free of pollution. (5③) Besides, (8) with the improvement of the living standards, more people can afford a healthier but more expensive lifestyle. So green food, (9) despite its higher price, still becomes people's favorite food. (5④) However, nowadays the market is full of real and fake green food, (10) making many consumers confused. (5⑤) Therefore, the government must strengthen the supervision and administration of green food market. (5⑥) Besides, consumers should increase the knowledge of green food. (11) Only in this way can green food play a more positive role in people's life.	意为"与……相比"。 (7) while表示对比。 (8) 意为"随着生活水平的提高"。 (9) 插入语，意为"尽管价格较高"。 (10) 现在分词短语做状语。 (11) 倒装句，"only + 状语"提前引起部分倒装。

星期二　如何写说明原因段和说明方法段

一、段落基本句型构造

1 说明原因段

说明原因段一般出现在图表阐释类和说明现象类作文的第二段，其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话引出下文对现象或问题原因的说明，这是段落的主题句；然后用3~5句话列举2~3点具体的原因，以支持主题句。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay entitled **What Electives to Choose**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 各大学开设了各种各样的选修课。
2. 学生因为各种原因选择了不同的选修课。
3. 以你自己为例……

第二段：说明原因段

①There are many different factors deciding what electives the students choose. ②Among all these factors, the interest of the students plays a very important role. ③The students, of courses, would like to learn what he or she is interested in. ④Moreover, many students will consider whether they could learn some practical skill by the elective, because nowadays companies are placing emphasis on a candidate's practical skills. ⑤Besides, the ability and the prestige of the teacher is also an important factor influencing the student's choice.

2 说明方法段

说明方法段一般出现在方法对策类作文的第二段（偶尔也会出现在第三段，具体根据提纲），其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话引出下文对解决办法、应对措施或决定因素的说明，这是段落的主题句；然后用3~4句话列举2~3点具体的方法、措施或决定因素，以支持主题句；最后再用一句话对前面的方法做出总结（这句话有时可省略）。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Reduce Waste on Campus**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 目前有些校园内浪费现象严重。
2. 浪费的危害。
3. 从我做起，杜绝浪费。

第三段：说明方法段

①Considering the seriousness of the problem, it is an urgent thing for us to take effective measures to eliminate waste on campus. ②Firstly, we college students must stop wasting water, electricity and food in our daily life. ③Secondly, we should learn to be economical and try to avoid spending money on something useless. ④Thirdly, we have responsibility to call on all our schoolmates to fight against waste. ⑤Only in this way can waste on campus be eliminated in the near future.

二、各类功能句常规写法

1 说明原因段

1）引出原因

① **There are many factors explaining/accounting for/contributing to** this phenomenon.（First of all/Above all，… Moreover，… Besides…）
许多因素导致了这一现象。（首先，……其次，……另外，……）

② **There are several reasons which may account for** my preference of the program.
以下一些原因可以解释我对这一课程的偏好。

③ **There are a large number of reasons for** this social phenomenon，**but in general，they come down to three major ones.**（Firstly，… Secondly，… Finally，…）
导致这种现象的原因有很多，但总体来说，主要有三点。（首先，……其次，……最后，……）

④ **There are mainly two reasons behind** this phenomenon.（First，… Second，…）
在这一现象背后主要有两点原因。（首先，……其次，……）

⑤ **There are mainly three different reasons for** college students **to** take a work-study program.
大学生参加勤工俭学主要有三个方面的原因。

⑥ **There are many factors deciding/influencing** my choosing future job.
有许多因素决定/影响我对将来工作的选择。

⑦ **The reasons for** this phenomenon **mainly lie in** the following two aspects.
产生这一现象的原因主要有以下两个方面。

⑧ **The reasons for** education to enter the market **are obvious**.
教育走向市场化的原因是显而易见的。

⑨ This extravagant spending **is mainly caused by/ due to** the following reasons/factors.
这种过度消费主要是由以下因素/原因引起的。

⑩ **The following reasons are responsible for** the boom in continuing education.
下列原因导致了继续教育的热潮。

⑪ **The following three factors contribute to** the conflict.
以下三点因素导致了这个冲突。

⑫ **The following reasons can account for** the popularity of green food.
下列原因能够解释绿色食品流行的原因。

⑬ **Why** does “blog” become so popular in such a short time?

为什么“博客”在这么短的时间内会如此流行呢？

⑭ **But what lead to** the conflict between parental hopes and personal ideals?
但是，是什么导致了父母的期望和孩子的理想之间的冲突呢？

2）列举原因

① **One of the main reasons for** this change **is that** the living standard of Chinese people has been improved greatly.
产生这个变化的一个主要原因是中国人的生活水平得到了很大改善。

② **Among these reasons,** the enrollment expansion of universities **plays a very vital role.**
在所有的原因中，大学扩招是很重要的因素。

③ First, the interest **plays an important role in** one student's choosing an elective class. / The interest **is an important factor which influences/decides** one student's choosing an elective class.
首先，兴趣在学生选择选修课时起到至关重要的作用。/兴趣是影响/决定一个学生选择一门选修课的重要因素。

④ The weak supervision and management of traffic control sectors **is (also) a noticeable reason**.
交管部门的监管不力（也）是一个值得关注的原因。

⑤ Poor parents in rural areas cannot afford the high education for children, **which becomes a main reason for** their children's getting poor in the future.
在农村，贫穷的父母没有钱让他们的孩子接受高等教育，这是日后这些孩子变穷的主要原因。

⑥ More and more vehicles on road **increase the chances of** accidents.
汽车数量的增多增加了发生交通事故的几率。

⑦ The high social position of civil servants **is an important factor** drawing many people to choose it.
公务员有较高的社会地位，这是吸引人们选择它作为职业的一个重要因素。

⑧ More and more people become aware that those disasters **have much to do with** what we have done to the earth.
越来越多的人开始意识到，这些灾难的发生和我们人类对地球的所作所为有很大的关系。

⑨ Secondhand goods transactions **make it possible for people to** make good use of the goods which may be useless in their hands.
二手货交易使人们可以充分利用手里那些闲置的东西。

⑩ A part-time job can help release financial burdens on those poor students, **and hence** reduce the risk of their dropping school for lacking money.

兼职工作可以缓解贫困学生的经济负担，继而减少了他们因为缺钱而辍学的危险性。

⑪ **This results in/leads to/produces** a decreased chance for any individual graduate to find a job.
这使得大学毕业生找到工作的机会减少了。

⑫ Some teachers' classes could not attract students' interests **so that** some students would rather skip classes to study what they are interested in.
一些教师的课不能引起学生的兴趣，以至于一些学生宁愿选择逃课去学习他们感兴趣的东西。

⑬ Nowadays college students get **so** much love **that** they are insensitive to others' care and help.
现在的大学生受到了太多的关爱，他们已经对其他人的关心和帮助变得麻木不仁了。

⑭ **Because of/Due to/Thanks to** the poor Internet administration and weak network security, our information might be open, stolen or sold.
由于网络管理的欠缺和网络安全的薄弱，我们的信息可能被公开、偷窃或出售。

2 说明方法段

1）引出方法

① **But/Then how to** build an ideal teacher-student relationship?
但是/那么，如何才能建立一种理想的师生关系呢？

② **However, how should** a college freshman adapt himself to these differences?
然而，大学新生应该怎样适应这些不同呢？

③ **The following measures can be taken to** reduce campus waste.
下列措施可以用来减少校园浪费。

④ **Therefore, it's high time for us to take/that we took effective measures to** fight against cyber crimes.
因此，该是我们采取有效措施来抵制网络犯罪的时候了。

⑤ Obviously, **it is necessary to take some effective measures to reduce this phenomenon.**
显然，有必要采取有效的措施来减少这种现象。

⑥ **In order to** solve the conflict, both parents and children should pay their efforts.
为了解决这一冲突，父母和孩子双方都要付出努力。

⑦ **Considering the seriousness of the problem, it is necessary for** college students

to learn how to keep psychologically healthy.
考虑到问题的严重性，了解如何保持心理健康对于大学生来说是十分必要的。

⑧ **Considering the seriousness of the problem, effective measures should be taken to** protect us against noise.
考虑到问题的严重性，应该采取有效措施来保护我们免受噪声的干扰。

⑨ **Considering the above factors/the above-mentioned, we should/must** be careful in selecting and using references books.
考虑到以上因素/综上所述，我们应该/必须谨慎地选用参考书。

⑩ **Considering the bad effects of** depression, it **must be taken more seriously**.
考虑到抑郁症的负面影响，我们必须更加重视它。

⑪ **Taking the above-mentioned into consideration**, I think, **it is high time that we took effective measures to** improve public morals.
考虑到以上因素/综上所述，我认为，是时候采取有效措施提高公共道德了。

2）列举方法

① **First of all**, the teacher and the student **should** respect each other, **which is the precondition of** good relationship.
首先，老师和学生应该互相尊重，这是建立良好关系的前提。

② **Second, attending collective activities is an effective way to** relieve pressure.
第二，参加集体活动是缓解压力的一个有效方法。

③ **To** communicate with each other actively **is necessary to** their understanding each other.
积极地与对方沟通，这对于彼此间的相互了解是必需的。

④ **Third, you should** learn to relax yourself **by** taking exercise or other recreational activities.
第三，你应该学会通过体育锻炼和其他娱乐活动放松自己。

⑤ We **should** learn to be tolerant and consider more for others, **which is necessary for** group living.
我们应该学会容忍和多为他人考虑，这对于集体生活来说是必需的。

⑥ **In addition**, we can **turn to** the recommendation of teachers and students around us.
此外，我们可以让老师和同学帮忙推荐。

⑦ **Second**, society and schools **must** increase input in moral education **and try to** build the atmosphere of being grateful.
第二，社会和学校必须增加对道德教育的投入，并努力营造一个感恩的氛围。

⑧ **Whatever** your ideal is, careful plan and preparation **is vital to** realizing it.

无论你的理想是什么，要想实现它，仔细的规划和准备都是至关重要的。

⑨ An optimistic, positive mind **is indispensable in** the process of your pursuing your ideal.

乐观、积极的心态在你追求理想的过程中是不可或缺的。

⑩ To those patients with depression, **first of all**, **it is important to** accept treatment timely **instead of** covering or ignoring the disease.

对于抑郁症患者，首要的是要及时接受治疗，而不能掩盖或忽视它。

⑪ **Actually**, **the best** treatment is **a combination of** medication and psychological help.

实际上，最好的方法是将医学治疗和心理辅导相结合。

⑫ **Secondly**, more advanced technology **should be developed to** reduce industrial noise and traffic noise.

第二，应该开发更多先进的技术以减少工业和交通噪声。

⑬ **Besides**, **more** talented people **should be trained and more** effective firewalls **should be** built up **so as to** make the Net immune to all kinds of viruses.

此外，应该培养更多优秀的人才并建立更有效的防护墙，以便使网络不受各种病毒的侵害。

⑭ **To** reverse the trend **is not a light task**, **and it requires the common efforts of all citizens**.

要扭转这一趋势并不容易，它需要所有公民的共同努力。

⑮ **We must look for all immediate methods, because the present situation, if permitted to continue, will sure lead to serious results**.

我们必须立刻寻找解决办法，因为现在的形势如果持续下去的话势必会导致严重的后果。

⑯ **There is no immediate solution to the problem of** energy shortage, **but** our small economical behaviors in daily life **might be quite helpful/beneficial**.

能源短缺问题并没有立竿见影的解决办法，但是在我们日常生活中很小的节约行为可能会对解决这个问题带来很大的帮助。

⑰ **No easy method can solve the problem of** pollution **in a short time**, **but** the general awareness of the necessity/importance of environmental protection **might be the first step on the right way**.

目前还没有简单的办法能够在短期内解决污染问题，但是，使人们普遍认识到保护环境的必要性/重要性或许是有效的第一步。

3）总结方法

① **Only in this way can we** make full use of reference books.

只有这样，我们才能充分地利用参考书。

② **Only through these methods/measures could noise problem be solved** fundamentally.

只有通过这些方法/措施，噪声问题才能够从根本上得到解决。

③ **Only in this way can people reduce the chance of** suffering from depression.

只有这样，人们才能够减少患上抑郁症的机会。

④ **Only when** campus newspapers are allowed to voice the feelings and ideas of students, **can they** become more popular among students.

只有当校报能够反映学生的感情和想法时，它才能够更受学生的欢迎。

⑤ **As long as** both parents and children learn to think from the other side's point of view, the conflicts between them **can be** avoided.

只有父母和孩子都能够从对方的角度考虑时，他们之间的冲突才能够避免。

⑥ **In a word**, the improvement of public morals **depends on all of us in this society**.

总之，公共道德的提高要靠我们所有人。

⑦ **In a word, it takes our common efforts to** defeat cyber crimes.

总之，战胜网络犯罪需要我们共同的努力。

⑧ **In a word**, **only if** you have an ideal, **you can** have the chance of realizing it.

总之，只要有理想，你就一定有机会实现它。

三、典型段落操练

要求：请撰写下列作文，注意其中说明原因段或说明方法段的写法。

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Pets' Services**. You should write at least 120 words and base your composition on the outline given below:

1. 如今宠物服务十分流行。
2. 分析宠物服务流行的原因。
3. 谈谈你的看法。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Deal with Sub-health.** You should write at least 120 words and base your composition on the outline given below:

1. 现代社会很多人都处于“亚健康”状态。

2. 分析造成“亚健康”的原因。
3. 应该如何解决“亚健康”问题?

参考范文

练习一

Pets' Services

第一段：概述现象段

Nowadays, more and more pets' services emerge in the markets, which have aroused great concern. Many people send their pets to the related shops to accept the pets' service and the pets do become more beautiful and healthier than ever before. In addition, pets' services are diversified, such as pets' barbershops and pets' canteens. The reasons for this phenomenon are varied.

第二段：说明原因段

Among all these reasons, the owner's love for pets plays a critical role. Regarding pets as friends and family members, people would like to spend some money on their pets. Moreover, with the improvement of people's living standards, the pets' service, a new and profitable business attracts a lot of people's attention. Besides, large investment in pets' services makes the popularity of these services possible.

第二段：总结观点段

In my opinion, pets' services do good to both the society and the individual. For one thing, it can offer more job opportunities and stimulate the development of economy. For another, it makes the pets more pleasing to both the eye and the mind, thus people becoming happier when stay with their beautiful pets. Therefore, the development of pets' services should be encouraged.

练习二

How to Deal with Sub-health

第一段：概述问题段

Nowadays, quite a few people are suffering from sub-health. Indeed, sub-health can result in both physical and mental diseases. Even worse, people who suffer from sub-health are more easily to die prematurely.

第二段：说明原因段

There are many factors resulting in sub-health. Among these, the pace of modern

life plays a vital role. The fast pace of modern life exerts great pressure on people and pressure is the ultimate cause of sub-health. What's more, modern people spend too much night time working or entertaining, which seriously affects their health.

第三段：说明方法段

Considering the great harm brought by sub-health, I think it is high time that we took effective measures to prevent sub-health. Firstly, people must have enough sleep to ensure that they can regain energy and physical strength. Secondly, people should have a rational diet under the instruction of doctor in order to avoid the diseases caused by malnutrition or super nutrition. Thirdly, people should regularly do some exercise to keep healthy. To conclude, it is an urgent thing to take flexible measures to avoid the threat of sub-health.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Improve Public Morals.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 目前社会上违反公德的行为仍然时有发生。
2. 这些行为带来的危害。
3. 你认为应该如何提高社会公德?

范文	点评
Nowadays there are still many behaviors against public morality, (1) such as spitting or littering in public, cutting in line. (2①) One of the main reasons for these (2②) is that some people lack personal manners and public consciousness. (3①) In addition, (4) weak implementation of the administration measures (5) contribute a lot to these uncivilized behaviors.	(1) 意为“例如”，用于表示列举。 (2) 列举原因时常用的句式。 (3) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (4) 意为“管理措施执行不力”。 (5) 列举原因时常用的句式。
(3②) Indeed, these small things in many people's eyes (6) have brought great bad effects. (3③) Above all, these immoral behaviors disturb social orders and disrupt social stability. (3④) Moreover, one's violating public morals not only	(6) 引出危害时常用的句式。 (7) 引出解决办法时常用

invades others' benefits but also does harm to himself. For example, if most people buy pirated products, those original producers might lose the enthusiasm to continue their producing. (7) Taking the above-mentioned into consideration, I think, it is high time that we took effective measures to improve public morals. (3⑤) On one hand, we must use education to (8) enhance their moral consciousness. (3⑥) On the other hand, the government should improve the administration system and ensure the (9) efficient implementation of administration measures. (3⑦) In a word, the improvement of public morals depends on all of us.	的句式。 (8) 意为"提高公共意识"。 (9) 意为"管理措施的有效执行"。

星期三　如何写说明危害段和说明好处段

一、段落基本句型构造

1 说明危害段

说明危害段一般出现在对策方法类作文的第二段或是利弊分析类作文的第二段，其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话总述问题的危害或弊端，这是段落的主题句；然后用3~4句话列举2~3点具体的危害或弊端，以支持主题句；最后再用一句话对这些危害或弊端作出总结，引出下面对解决方法或观点的阐述(本句也可能放在下一段的开头)。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Reduce Waste on Campus**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 目前有些校园内浪费现象严重。
2. 浪费的危害。
3. 倡导从我做起，杜绝浪费。

第二段：说明危害段

①As everyone sees, this phenomenon produces harmful effects in many aspects. ②Above all, the waste of those precious resources, such as water and electricity, will bring great economic loss to our country. ③Also, as these resources are not inexhaustible, wasting them will be a treat to human's future survival. ④Besides, our waste will undoubtedly burden our family and society heavily. ⑤Therefore, it is high time for us to take effective measures to eliminate waste on campus.

2 说明好处段

说明好处段一般出现在说明现象类作文的第二段或是利弊分析类作文的第一段或第二段（具体根据提纲），其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话总述问题的好处或优点，这是段落的主题句（如果出现在第一段，该句前面一般还有一句对主题的总述）；然后用3～4句话列举2～3点具体的好处或优点，以支持主题句。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay on the topic **The Pros and Cons of College Students' Taking Part-time Jobs.** You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 分析大学生做兼职的利与弊。
2. 谈谈你的看法。

第一段：说明好处段

①Nowadays many college students take part-time jobs in their spare time. ②It is no doubt that taking a part-time job brings about several advantages to college students. ③Above all, part-time jobs provide students with a valuable chance to put their knowledge into practice. ④Moreover, the experience they get from part-time jobs will prepare them for the future job market. ⑤Besides, students can get some money to help unload the burden on their families.

除了说明危害段和说明好处段以外，四级作文中还经常涉及说明影响段（大多出现在说明现象类作文中），其结构与说明危害段和说明好处段基本相同，影响的内容可能有好有坏，也可能属于中性（无所谓好坏），考生在具体写作时要注意灵活处理。

二、各类功能句常规写法

1 说明危害段

1）引出危害

① However, **problems may also arise**.
然而，也可能会出现问题。

② These immoral behaviors **have brought great bad/negative effects on** our society.
这些不道德的行为已经给我们的社会带来极大的负面影响。

③ Depression **can bring great bad influences/effects on** one's study, work and life.
抑郁会给人的学习、工作和生活带来极大的不良影响。

④ Noise **brings great harm to** our daily lives.
噪声给我们的日常生活带来很大的危害。

⑤ **However**, the use of the so-called "convenience goods" **is extremely harmful in many ways**.
然而，使用这些所谓的"便利品"有很多害处。

⑥ **It is very clear that** this phenomenon **produces harmful effects in many aspects**.
很显然，这种现象会产生很多危害。

⑦ Psychological problems **are likely to lead to very serious results**.
心理问题可能会导致非常严重的后果。

⑧ **On the other hand**, private tutoring **has also some disadvantages**.
然而，私人家教也有一些缺点。

⑨ **As every coin has two sides**, recycling textbooks **has also some disadvantages**.
正如每个硬币都有两面一样，循环使用教科书也有一些弊端。

⑩ **However**, many others hold that the holiday economy **does more harm than good**.
然而，也有许多人认为，假日经济弊大于利。

⑪ **However**, relaxing the limit of age and marriage **might bring some problems**.
不过，放宽年龄和婚姻方面的限制可能会带来一些问题。

⑫ **In fact**, depression **affects not only** one's mind **but also** his body.
实际上，抑郁既会影响人的思想也会影响人的身体。

⑬ **However**, deciding everything for children **does not help them but harm them in many ways**.
然而，为孩子决定一切不但对他们没有帮助，反而会有很多害处。

⑭ **Though** most of students' taking seats in advance are for the purpose of better study, **this kind of phenomenon has great negative effects**.

尽管大多数学生提前占座是为了更好地学习，但是这种现象还是有很大的负面影响。

⑮ A smart use of reference books **is certainly beneficial**, **but** the misuse and overuse of them **may cause a lot of problems**.

明智地使用参考书当然有益，但是误用或过度使用这些书就可能会带来很多问题。

⑯ If this trend continues, it **will exert undesirable/disastrous effect/influence**.

这种趋势如果持续下去的话，将会带来不良的/灾难性的影响。

2）列举危害

① **First**, the travel craze **puts a heavy burden on** the traffic system.

首先，旅游热潮给交通系统造成了沉重的负担。

② **Second**, thousands of tourists flood into scenic spots, **causing** over-crowdedness and safety **problems**.

第二，成千上万的游客涌向各个景点，带来过度拥挤和安全问题。

③ **Secondly**, some students rely on the reference books **too much**, **which is unfavorable to** the improvement of their ability to work out the solutions by themselves.

第二，一些学生过分地依赖参考书，这不利于培养他们独立解决问题的能力。

④ **Thirdly**, there are some reference books filled with mistakes, **which might mislead** students.

第三，一些参考书中错误连篇，可能会误导学生。

⑤ **Finally**, disposable products **make people** develop a throwaway habit, **which is harmful to** our social atmosphere.

最后，一次性产品可能会让人们养成随手扔东西的习惯，这将对整个社会的风气造成不利的影响。

⑥ **On the hand**, it is a selfish behavior, **which damages** other students' interests.

一方面，这是一种自私的行为，会损害其他同学的利益。

⑦ **For one thing**, married students have to take care of their family, **which brings more difficulties for** school management.

一方面，已婚学生必须要照顾家庭，这会给学校管理带来更多的困难。

⑧ **For one thing**, it takes up **so much** of the pupil's time **that** he can hardly find enough time for rest and entertainment.

一方面，这会占用学生太多的时间，导致学生几乎没有足够的时间休息和娱乐。

⑨ **Moreover**, one's violating public morality **not only invades others' benefits but also does harm to himself**.

而且，违反公共道德不仅侵犯他人的利益也会伤害到自己。

⑩ **Furthermore**, disposable products **cause serious** pollution to our environment.
而且，一次性产品会给环境造成严重的污染。

⑪ **More seriously/Even worse**, some students **might lose control of** their emotions and behaviors.
更糟的是，一些学生可能会无法控制自己的情绪和行为。

⑫ **What's worse**, depression **is one of the main reasons that** people kill themselves.
更糟的是，抑郁是导致人们自杀的主要原因之一。

⑬ These disasters **have killed** millions of people, **destroyed** countless homes, **and wiped out** numerous pieces of fertile land.
这些灾难已经夺走了数百万人的生命，摧毁了无数的家园，还吞噬了大量肥沃的土地。

⑭ Long exposure to noise **will lead to the loss of** hearing **and possibly** drive people mad.
长期接触噪声会导致失聪，还可能使人发疯。

⑮ **For example**, if most people buy pirated products, those original producers will **suffer great damage and might lose** the enthusiasm to continue their producing, **which in turn influences** consumers.
例如，如果大多数人都购买盗版产品，那些正版产品的生产者将遭受极大的损失，而且可能会失去继续生产的热情，这反过来会影响到消费者。

⑯ Many college students **are too much indulged in** these games **so that** their health and academic performances are seriously affected.
许多大学生过分迷恋这些游戏，导致他们的健康和学习成绩受到了严重的影响。

2 说明好处段（或说明影响段）

1）引出好处（或影响）

① **The advantages of** this policy **are obvious**.
该项制度的好处十分明显。

② Telecommuting system **has many advantages** .
远程办公系统有很多优点。

③ **Compared with** traveling alone, traveling with a companion **also has its advantages**.
和独自旅行相比，结伴旅行也有自身的优点。

④ **Undoubtedly**, college students **can benefit a lot from** physical exercise.
毫无疑问，大学生能够从体育锻炼中得到很多好处。

⑤ These cultural activities **have brought many benefits for** college students.
这些文化活动已经给大学生带来了很多好处。

⑥ Pets' service **does good to both** the society **and** the individual.
宠物服务既有益于社会也有益于个人。

⑦ No doubt, digital products **have brought us great convenience and pleasure**.
毫无疑问，数码产品已经给我们带来了极大的便利和快乐。

⑧ The increasing number of people traveling abroad might **have both its advantages and disadvantages**.
出国旅行人数的增加可能有利有弊。

⑨ **As everyone sees**, this phenomenon **has brought considerable effect/influence on** people's work and life.
正如大家所看到的，这种现象已经给人们的工作和生活带来了极大的影响。

⑩ **Undoubtedly**, it will **produce profound/far-reaching/remarkable effect/influence on** people's life.
无疑，它将会对人们的生活产生深远的/显著的影响。

⑪ **It is obvious that** physical exercise **is very beneficial/favorable to** the healthy development of college students.
显然，体育锻炼对大学生的健康发展非常有益。

2）列举好处（或影响）

① **Firstly**, it **provides** more people **with** chances to receive higher education.
首先，它为更多的人提供接受高等教育的机会。

② **First of all**, these lectures **broaden** the students' knowledge horizon **and cultivate** their interests in different fields.
首先，这些讲座拓宽了学生的知识面，培养了他们对不同领域知识的兴趣。

③ **Moreover**, traveling alone **tends to bring** the traveler **unexpected surprise**, **such as** making a new friend and enjoying a different scenery.
而且，独自旅行往往会带给旅行者意外的惊喜，例如结交到新朋友，欣赏到别样的风景。

④ **Moreover**, physical exercise **is an effective way to** release pressure.
而且，体育锻炼是缓解压力的一种有效方式。

⑤ **Besides**, by attending practical activities, students can have more chances to contact others, **which can help** them **improve** their social skills.
此外，通过参加实践活动，学生可以获得更多和其他人接触的机会，这有助于提高他们的社交能力。

⑥ **Besides**, social practice **helps strengthen** students' sense of social responsibility.
此外，社会实践有助于增强学生的社会责任感。

⑦ **Besides**, lectures **make** the life of the students **colorful**.
此外，讲座使学生的生活变得丰富多彩。

⑧ Thanks to these cultural activities, our college life has become more colorful and enjoyable.
由于有了这些文化活动，我们的大学生活变得更加丰富和愉快。

三、典型段落操练

要求：请撰写下列作文，注意其中说明危害段或说明好处段的写法。

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Make Full Use of Reference Books**. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 参考书泛滥已成为师生共同关注的问题。
2. 参考书泛滥带来了哪些危害？
3. 作为大学生，应该如何正确选择和使用参考书？

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Social Practice**. You should write at least 120 words and base your composition on the outline given below:

1. 近年来各大学纷纷开展社会实践活动。
2. 社会实践能给学生带来哪些好处？
3. “我”对社会实践的看法。

参考范文

练习一

How to Make Full Use of Reference Books

第一段：概述问题段

Nowadays reference books have become a problem of great concern for both teachers and students. There are many kinds of reference books available in the book market. A smarter use of these books is certainly beneficial, but the misuse and overuse of them may cause a lot of harms.

第二段：说明危害段

First of all, teaching reference books might make the students less attentive in class. Armed with reference books, many students may think that they know what the teacher is going to talk about. So they may not listen to the teacher in class at

all. Secondly, some students rely on the reference books too much, which is unfavorable to the improvement of their ability to work out the solutions for themselves. Thirdly, there are some reference books filled with mistakes, which might mislead students.

第三段：说明方法段

Considering the above-mentioned, we should be careful in selecting and using references books. Firstly, we should check the contents of the book carefully but not only pay attention to the brand of publishing house. In addition, we can turn to the recommendation of teachers and students around us. Besides, reference books are just an assistant, so we couldn't rely on them too much. Only in this way can we make full use of reference books.

练习二

Social Practice of College Students

第一段：概述现象段

Nowadays many universities encourage and organize students to take part in social practice activities. During the holidays, more and more students choose to be volunteers, take part-time jobs, or take part in other practical activities alike. It's obvious that social practice is playing a more and more important role in China's college education.

第二段：说明好处段

Undoubtedly, college students have benefited a lot from social practice. Above all, they are provided with more opportunities to contact the real world outside the campus. Moreover, in social practice activities, students can apply their knowledge to the solution to the practical problems. So their practical skills are improved greatly. Besides, social practice helps strengthen students' sense of social responsibility.

第三段：总结观点段

Considering the above-mentioned, I think, it is necessary for college students to participate in social practice. However, social practice may bring some problems. For example, some students spend too much time in taking part-time jobs so as to ignore their study. Therefore, we should try to balance the relationship between social practice and study.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **College Students Should Attend Physical Exercise**. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 有些大学生不喜欢参加体育锻炼，这种做法是相当不可取的。
2. 大学生参加体育锻炼的好处。
3. 你喜欢参加何种体育锻炼？

范文	点评
Physical exercise is a necessary part of college life. (1①) However, still some college students do not like to attend sports activities. They think those activities waste their time and influence their study. (2) Indeed, (3) it is very unwise for college students to keep distance from physical exercise. Physical exercise (4) is very beneficial to college students. (1②) First of all, (5) attending sports activities can help college students build a strong body and keep abundant energy. (1③) Moreover, physical exercise is (6) an effective way to release pressure and keep a pleasant mood. (1④) Besides, (7) by attending physical activities, students can have chances to contact and communicate with others, (8) which can help them improve their social skills. Nowadays colleges and universities provide many sports facilities for students to do physical exercise. Students can choose freely (9) according to their interests and needs. (10) As for me, I am keen on all kinds of ball games, (11) especially football and basketball. From these games, I have gained great pleasure and made many friends. (1⑤) To conclude, every college student (12) should not hesitate to attend sports activities.	(1) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰，意思连贯。 (2) 意为“实际上，事实上”，相当于 in fact。 (3) 固定句式：It is… for sb. to do sth. 其中 it 是形式主语，不定式短语是实际的主语。 (4) 意为“对……有益”。 (5) 动名词短语做主语。 (6) 意为“缓解压力的一种有效的方式”。 (7) by表示方式、方法。 (8) which引导非限制性定语从句。 (9) 意为“根据自己的兴趣和需要”。 (10) 用于引出个人喜好。 (11) 意为“尤其是，特别是”。 (12) 意为“应该毫不犹豫地做某事”。

星期四　如何写提出观点段和总结观点段

一、段落基本句型构造

1 提出观点段

提出观点段分为两种：

第一种是提出一种正确的观点，一般出现在论证观点类作文的第一段。其基本的句型构造是：先用两句话引出要论证的观点；然后用2~3句话阐述观点蕴涵的道理。

第二种是提出两种对立的观点，一般出现在对比分析类作文的第一段。其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话引出要讨论的主题；然后用1~2句话提出关于该主题的两种不同的看法。

需要注意的是，第二种提出观点段有时也可以是先提出对立观点中的一种观点，然后简单进行论证，之后第二段再提出另外一种观点并进行论证，考生在写作时可根据具体情况灵活处理。

2 总结观点段

与提出观点段一样，总结观点段也分为两种：

第一种是对一种观点进行总结，一般出现在观点论证类作文的第三段。其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话重申所论证的观点的正确性或其中的道理；然后用2~3句话提出建议、倡议或正确的做法，呼应论点。

第二种是对两种对立的观点进行总结，一般出现在对比分析类作文的第三段。其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话表明自己的倾向或选择；然后用2~3句话说明自己的倾向或选择的理由；最后用一句话提出建议或正确的做法，与前面的内容呼应。

需要注意的是，总结观点段也有可能出现在其他类型作文的第三段，比如说明现象类作文的提纲中就经常会要求考生谈谈对现象的看法，考生在写作时应根据提纲灵活处理。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Knowledge Is Power**. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 知识就是力量。
2. 试举例论证。

第一段：提出观点段

①It is generally accepted that knowledge is power. ②The truth of it is self-evident. ③With knowledge, one can find his position in the society. ④And the history of the human civilization is the process of accumulation of knowledge.

第二段：总结观点段

①All mentioned above tell us that the power of knowledge is infinite. ②It is knowledge that has brought us such a prosperous and strong country. ③Therefore, we must try hard to acquire as much knowledge as we can to build a beautiful world.

例（2008 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Making Friends Similar or Different**? You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 很多人认为结交性格相似的朋友比较好。
2. 另一些人则认为还是结交性格互补的朋友比较好。
3. 你的看法。

第一段：提出观点段

①When it comes to choosing friends, there is no complete agreement among people. ②Some people take it for granted that it's better to make friends with similar characters. ③However, others maintain that friends with complementary characters seem advantageous.

第二段：总结观点段

①Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer to have both types of friends. ②For one thing, everyone has his strong points, and we can learn more from each other. ③For another, friendship has something to do with fate, and it shouldn't be arranged in advance. ④Taking the above-mentioned factors into consideration, I may reasonably conclude that friendship is so valuable in our life that we should treasure it regardless of characters.

二、各类功能句常规写法

1 提出观点段

1）概述引出观点

① "Practice makes perfect" **is a proverb full of logic**.

“熟能生巧”是一句充满哲理的谚语。

② **The proverb** “Where there is a will, there is a way” **has been generally accepted for many years**.

许多年来，“有志者，事竟成”这句谚语一直得到人们的普遍认可。

③ **There is a widespread proverb**, “Man proposes, God disposes”, **which means that** the planning lies with man, the outcome with Heaven.

有一句广泛流传的谚语：“谋事在人，成事在天”，意思是说，事情是由人来规划的，但是结果却不是人能控制的。

④ **There is an old/popular saying/proverb which goes that** “Practice makes perfect.”

有这样一句古老的谚语：“熟能生巧。”

⑤ **It has been widely accepted that** union is strength.

人们一直相信：团结就是力量。

⑥ Economy **is a traditional Chinese virtue**, **which is very important to** the healthy development of our whole society.

节约是中华民族的一项优良传统，它对于我们整个社会的健康发展至关重要。

⑦ **Nowadays there are still many people who** take “Silence is gold” as a doctrine. **However**, **indeed**, in many cases, silence is not gold, especially in modern society.

现在，仍然有很多人把“沉默是金”当做信条。然而，事实上，在很多情况下，沉默并不是金，尤其是在现代社会。

⑧ **No doubt**, opportunity can bring one’s abilities and skills to full play. **However**, one’s success is **not** decided only by opportunity **but** depends on many other factors.

无疑，机会可以让一个人的技能得到充分发挥，但是，一个人的成功并不只是由机会决定的，而是取决于许多其他因素。

2）阐述观点中的道理

① **It tells us that** after practicing doing something again and again, one can do it perfectly.

它告诉我们，经过反复实践以后，人能够熟练地完成某项工作。

② **It reminds us that** if we are to achieve our final goal, we have to do it in a down-to-earth way.

这提醒我们，如果要想实现最终的目标，我们就必须脚踏实地。

③ **It means that** as long as a person possesses a strong will, he will certainly accomplish a task no matter how difficult it is.

这意味着，一个人只要拥有坚强的意志，不管多么困难的任务都能够完成。

④ **This proverb reflects** a relation between success and luck, **that is**, we should always work hard in order to achieve our goal, **though in many cases** our final

outcome may be unsatisfactory.

这句谚语反映了成功和运气之间的关系，也就是说，我们应该努力去实现自己的目标，尽管许多时候我们可能得不到令人满意的结果。

⑤ **The truth of this saying is** not to give up comfort but to enhance efficiency.

这句话的意思并不是要我们放弃舒适，而是要提高效率。

⑥ **The truth of it is deep and profound.**

其中的道理是深远的。

⑦ **Indeed**, **whether** in the past **or** at present, economy **is praiseworthy and should be popularized in our society**.

事实上，无论过去还是现在，节约都值得称颂，应该在全社会普及。

3）引出有争议的话题

① **Recently**, China has banned all supermarkets, department stores and shops offering plastic bags for free, **which has caused wide attention**.

最近，中国已经禁止了所有超市、商场和商店免费提供塑料袋，这引起了广泛的关注。

② In recent years, more and more celebrities have been admitted to famous universities even without an entrance examination. **This phenomenon has become a subject of widespread controversy**.

近几年，越来越多的名人甚至没有经过入学考试就被著名的大学录取，这一现象引起了广泛争议。

③ Many people like reading books. **However**, **how to** get the book to read, buy it or borrow it, **differs from one to another**.

许多人喜欢读书，然而，关于书究竟是应该买来读还是应该借来读，人们看法不一。

④ **Some people propose such a question**: Will traditional newspapers be replaced by electronic newspapers?

一些人提出这样一个疑问：传统的报纸会被电子报纸取代吗？

⑤ **Different people hold different views about whether or not** one should expect a reward when doing a good deed.

现在，对于做好事是否应该得到回报这一问题，不同的人有不同的看法。

⑥ **Nowadays**, **there is a heated debate as to whether** textbooks should be recycled.

现在，关于教科书是否应该循环使用的问题，存在着广泛的争议。

⑦ Nowadays **there is no complete agreement on** the relation between diploma and ability.

现在，关于文凭和能力的关系，人们看法不一。

⑧ **When it comes to whether** the university campus **should** be open to tourists, **there is no complete agreement among people**.
当谈到大学校园是否应该对游客开放这一话题时，人们持有不同的观点。

⑨ **When it comes to** school activities, **there is no consensus of opinions among people**.
当谈到学校活动时，人们看法不一。

⑩ **As to** the employment orientation, **different students have different opinions/choices**.
关于就业方向，不同的学生有不同的想法或选择。

⑪ **Opinions vary from** individual **to** individual, **from** culture **to** culture.
不同的人，不同的文化，对这一问题的看法都不相同。

⑫ When asked which mode of travel they like, **different people will offer different preferences**.
当被问及喜欢哪种旅行方式时，不同的人有不同的偏好。

⑬ Under the influence of these changes, s**ome people come to the conclusion that** traditional virtues, like thrift, honesty, and being happy to help others, are out of date, **to which I could not give my consent**.
在这些变化的影响下，一些人得出这样的结论：节俭、诚实、乐于助人等传统美德已经过时了。对此，我不能同意。

⑭ **Some people think** college students should often take part in school activities, **while others argue** the main task for students is learning, so they shouldn't pay too much attention to school activities.
一些人认为大学生应该经常参加学校活动，而另外一些人则认为学生的主要任务是学习，不该过分关注学校活动。

⑮ **Faced with** the phenomenon of "DINK", **quite a few people think** that it is a fashion, **but other people conceive differently**.
面对"丁克"现象，相当一部分人认为这是一种时尚，但是也有很多人并不认同。

⑯ **There are always many arguments about** the advantages and disadvantages of examination. **Some people think** examination is the only best way to test how examinees have mastered what they have studied. **However, still others do not agree with this.**
关于考试的利弊一直存在许多争议，一些人认为考试是测试知识掌握程度的最好方式，然而，也有很多人并不同意这种说法。

⑰ There are more and more people looking for jobs every year, **but they have different views about** what kind of job they should choose. **Some of them focus**

their attention on the jobs that promise high salaries. **Others show a preference for** those jobs that offer chances to learn skills and advancement possibilities.
每年都有越来越多的人在找工作，但是他们对于应该选择什么样的工作却有着不同的看法，一些人看重能够提供高薪的工作，还有很多人倾向于那些能够提供学习和提升技能的空间的工作。

2 总结观点段

1）总结观点

① **All the above-mentioned tell us that** practice plays a very vital role in our study and work.
综上所述，实践在我们的学习和工作中发挥着极其重要的作用。

② **Therefore, we should** combine theory with practice in realizing our goals.
因此，我们在实现目标的过程中，应该把理论和实践相结合。

③ **Judging from the evidence offered, we might safely draw the conclusion that** if we wish to succeed, we must firstly have a resolution and remember the saying, "Where there is a will, there is a way."
综上所述，我们可以得出这样的结论：如果想要成功，我们首先必须要有决心，并且铭记"有志者，事竟成"这句话。

④ **From the above-mentioned, we can conclude** that it is not the opportunity itself that can decide one's success or failure.
综上所述，我们可以得出这样的结论：机会本身并不能决定一个人成功与否。

⑤ **Therefore, whatever we do, we should not** pay too much attention to the speed and ignore these laws.
因此，无论做什么，我们都不应该过分追求速度而忽视了这些法则。

⑥ **Therefore, I think it is a trend that** traditional newspapers will be replaced by electronic newspapers.
因此，我认为，传统报纸被电子报纸取代是一个趋势。

⑦ **To conclude/In a word, it is every citizen's responsibility to** do good deeds without expecting any reward.
总之，做好事不求回报是每一个公民的责任。

⑧ **In general, the advantages of science far outweigh its disadvantages.**
总体来说，科学的利远远超过它的弊。

⑨ **But, in sum**, the examination **does more good than harm**. **Therefore, I think** the correct attitude towards examination should be to take full advantage of it and avoid its disadvantage.

但是，总体来看，考试肯定是利大于弊。因此，我认为，对待考试的正确态度应该是“扬长避短”。

2）表明观点、倾向或选择

① **Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer the first/former/second/latter one**.
权衡两种观点，我宁愿选择前者/后者。

② **Weighing up these two arguments, I think** a university should be an open place.
权衡两种观点，我认为大学应该是一个开放的地方。

③ **Weighing up the advantages and disadvantages, I think** textbooks should be recycled.
权衡利弊，我认为，教科书应该循环使用。

④ **Considering the above-mentioned, I think**, traditional virtues remain indispensable elements in the Chinese character in modern society.
综上所述，我认为，传统美德仍然是现代中国不可缺少的元素。

⑤ **In my view**, our happiness and the realization of our ideal should depend on individual struggle.
我认为，我们的幸福和理想的实现应该靠我们的个人奋斗。

⑥ **As for me/Personally, I am in favor of** charging for plastic bags.
至于我，我非常赞成塑料袋收费。

⑦ **As for me, I will give my vote to** the development space first and then high salaries.
至于我，我会把发展空间放在首位，然后再考虑高工资。

⑧ **As far as I am concerned, I think** the examination is very useful to both teachers and students.
就我而言，我认为，考试对于老师和学生都非常有用。

⑨ **From my point of view**, luck does influence us sometimes, **but** in any case we are the master of our own fortune.
在我看来，运气有时候的确会影响我们，但是不管在什么时候，我们才是命运的掌控者。

⑩ **However, compared with** the negative aspects, **I think**, the blessing of science is more evident.
然而，和其负面影响相比，我认为，科学所带来的好处更加显而易见。

3）引出注意事项

① **But it is notable/worth noting that** costs related to the recycling of textbooks should be controlled in an acceptable range.

但是值得注意的是，循环使用教科书的成本应该控制在可以接受的范围内。

② **But of course**, we shouldn't neglect our studies.

但是，当然，我们不应该忽视学习。

③ **However, we must keep it in our mind** that study is the most important thing for us.

然而，我们必须记住，对我们来说学习是最重要的事情。

④ **However, sometimes,** some professors are too indulged in their scientific research projects for fame or higher position so as to ignore their teaching.

但是，有时候，一些教授为了名利过分专注于科研，忽视了教学。

三、典型段落操练

要求：请撰写下列作文，注意其中提出观点段或总结观点段的写法。

练习一

Directions: For this part you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay commenting on the saying "The love of economy is the root of all virtue." You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Internet or Newspapers**? You should write at least 120 words and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 现在许多人认为通过网络上获取消息更好，理由是……
2. 而另一些人依然认为报纸是获取消息的更好来源，理由是……
3. "我"的看法。

参考范文

练习一

The Importance of Economy

第一段：提出观点段

The saying "The love of economy is the root of all virtue." shows the importance of economy. The truth of it is deep and profound. Indeed, whether in the past or at present, economy is praiseworthy and should be popularized in our

society.

第二段：论证观点段

There are many reasons supporting this argument. As we know, it was just the virtue of economy that helped our country to get through the difficult periods in the days of founding of the new China. In modern society, though our economic level has been improved greatly, our rapid development to a great extent is at the cost of the overdue consumption of material resources. Besides, our country has a large population base, and our per-capita average of natural resources is low. Therefore, economy is still a necessity to our country.

第三段：总结观点段

We, as college students, should take our responsibility and learn to be economical in our daily life. Indeed, in terms of our clothing, food, sheltering, and transport, much work can be done to save valuable energy and natural resources such as power, water, coal, gas. What's more, we should put paper and second-hand textbooks into wise use. In sum, our daily life should be permeated with the sense of economy. Only in this way can we create a conservation-oriented society as soon as possible.

练习二

Internet or Newspapers?

第一段：提出观点段

When it comes to what is the better way to get the daily news, there is no complete agreement among people. Some people take it for granted that internet has become their main source of daily news. However, others maintain that newspapers should be regarded as a better source.

第二段：对比论证段

Those people who hold the first opinion believe internet news can vividly bring dramatic events of singular importance before our eyes. In addition, they can actively search for the information they want. However, still others do not agree this. In their opinions, newspapers have incomparable advantages in terms of convenience. Besides, they argue that the news on newspaper has stronger authority than on the internet.

第三段：总结观点段

Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer to the latter one. For one thing,

newspapers can be read at any time in any place. For another, newspaper is so cheap that nearly everyone can afford it. Taking above-mentioned factors into consideration, I may reasonably conclude that newspapers are the better source to know daily news.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **To Become a Specialist or a Generalist**? You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 有人认为一个学生应该努力成为一个“专才”。
2. 然而其他人则认为学生应该成为“通才”才能在现代社会立足。
3. 你的看法是……

范文	点评
(1①) When it comes to whether a student should become a specialist or a generalist, (1②) there is no complete agreement among people. (2①) Some people think that it is best for college students to (3) focus on developing skills in one field to become a specialist. (2②) However, others maintain that a versatile generalist (4①) is more welcomed in the competitive job market. (5) Those people who hold the former opinion believe that it is impossible to demand college students to become an all-round generalist within four years. (6①) In addition, (7) with increasing elaboration of social division, the specialists (8) are in more urgent need. (9) However, still others advocate the different opinion. They hold that college students should stretch themselves to (10) as many fields as possible to adapt to (11) the increasingly fierce competition. (6②) Besides, generalists (4②) are highly demanded in the information age.	(1) 引出有争议的话题的常用句式，when it comes to… 意为“当谈到或提及……”。 (2) 提出对立观点的常用句式。 (3) 意为“注重，集中”。 (4) 被动语态使用恰到好处。 (5) 用于引出第一种观点的理由。 (6) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (7) 意为“随着社会分工越来越细”。 (8) 意为“更加急需”。 (9) 用于引出对相反观点的论证。 (10) as… as 表示同级比较，意为“尽可能多的领域”。 (11) 意为“越来越激烈的竞争”。

（12）Personally, I am in favor of the former opinion.（13）I don't think it is advisable that college students equally spend their time and energy on several fields.（6③）Besides, the development of high-tech needs specialists. Therefore, I think to be a specialist is the right choice for most students.	（12）用于引出个人观点。 （13）注意否定转移。

星期五　如何写论证观点段和对比论证段

一、段落基本句型构造

1 论证观点段

论证观点段一般出现在论证观点类作文的第二段，其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话承上启下，引出接下来对上段提出观点的论证；然后用3～4句话列举论据来论证观点的正确性。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed thirty minutes to write a composition on the topic **Knowledge is Power**. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:
1. 知识就是力量。
2. 试举例论证。

第二段：论证观点段

①The infinite power of knowledge has been proved by many remarkable examples. ②A case in point is the function of knowledge in the development of one nation. ③Whether in war times or in peace times, one nation who doesn't emphasize knowledge is doomed to fall behind others. ④For another example, in people's normal life, knowledge plays a vital role. ⑤It is knowledge that has brought us such hi-tech products as computers and televisions which make our life enjoyable and colorful.

2 对比论证段

对比论证段一般出现在对比分析类作文的第二段，其基本的句型构造是：先用2~3句话阐述第一种观点或选择的理由；然后再通过一个转折句引出第二种观点或选择，再用2~3句话阐述第二种观点或选择的理由。

需要注意的是，有时候对比论证段可以分为两段，第一段先提出第一种观点并进行论证，第二段再提出第二种观点并进行论证，考生在写作时可根据提纲和自己的写作习惯灵活处理。

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Making Friends Similar or Different**? You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 很多人认为结交性格相似的朋友比较好。
2. 另一些人则认为还是结交性格互补的朋友比较好。
3. 你的看法。

第二段：对比论证段

①Those people who hold the former opinion believe similar friends have more common ideas and interests. ②So, it is happier and easier for them to get along with each other. ③However, still others hold the different opinion. ④They argue that by making friends with different characteristics, they can complement each other. ⑤Besides, in their opinions, different friends can broaden each other's minds.

二、各类功能句常规写法

1 论证观点段

1）举例论证

① **There are numerous examples supporting this argument.**
有大量的例子支持这一观点。

② **There are many examples which can support this argument.**
有大量的例子支持这一观点。

③ **There are too numerous examples to mention one by one.**
有太多的例子，不胜枚举。

④ **Let's take** finding a job **as an/another example.**

让我们以找工作为（另一个）例子。

⑤ Han Xin of the Han Dynasty **is a typical example of** those who have patience.
汉朝的韩信就是一个典型的有耐心的人。

⑥ **A case in point** is the important role of patience in English study.
一个典型的例子就是耐心在英语学习中的重要作用。

⑦ **A good example to illustrate** is higher divorce rate in recent years.
近年来的高离婚率就是一个很好的例证。

⑧ **For another example**, if we want to be proficient in using the computer, we also need lots of practice.
再比如说，如果我们想要熟练地使用计算机，也需要大量的练习。

2）列举论据

① **The following reasons/facts can support the argument.**
下面的理由/事实能够支持这一观点。

② **There are many facts which can prove the argument.**
有许多事实能够证明这一观点。

③ **This argument can be proved by the following facts.**
这一观点能够被下列事实所证明。

④ **This is close to suggest that** a strong will is a vital factor to one's final success.
这就证明，坚强的意志是一个人取得最终成功的关键因素。

⑤ **Without** practical operating experience, **one can not** become an expert on computer.
没有实际的操作练习，一个人不可能成为计算机方面的专家。

⑥ As we know, **it was** just the virtue of economy **that** helped our country to get through the difficult periods in the days of founding of the new China.
如我们所知，正是节约的美德帮助我们国家度过了新中国成立初期那段艰苦的岁月。

2 对比论证段

1）提出或论证第一种观点

① **Those who advocate** college students' frequent attending school activities **say that** these activities provide students good chances to meet more people and make more friends.
提倡大学生应该经常参加学校活动的人认为，这些活动可以给学生提供更多接触他人和结交朋友的机会。

② **People holding the first view usually think** that more money will result in more

happiness.
持第一种观点的人通常认为，钱越多越幸福。

③ **Some people object strongly** that universities lower admission requirements for celebrities. **They hold that** this admission pattern will damage the basic fairness rule of education.
一些人强烈反对大学降低标准招收名人，他们认为这种招生模式会破坏教育的公平原则。

④ **Most people welcome this measure. They believe charging for plastic bags** will to some extent force people to reduce using plastic bags, **which** will help improve our environment.
大多数人欢迎这项措施，他们认为塑料袋收费会在某种程度上减少塑料袋的使用，这将有利于改善环境。

⑤ **Quite a few people's answer is yes. They say** electronic newspapers can be updated instantly.
相当一部分人的回答是肯定的。他们指出，电子报纸能够即时更新。

2）提出或论证相反观点

① **However, still some other people/others think differently/do not agree this/hold the opposite opinion.**
然而，还有一些人持不同的观点。

② **However, still others don't agree this argument**. **They think that** university professors are the main force of scientific research work.
然而，还有一些人不同意这种观点，他们认为，大学教授是科研工作的主力军。

③ **However, the holders of the second view argue** that one should develop his skills as roundly as possible.
然而，持第二种观点的人认为，一个人应该尽可能全面地培养自己的技能。

④ **However, there are many others who take** Leifeng as a model.
然而，也有许多人把雷锋当做榜样。

⑤ **But it doesn't mean that** a good marriage can ensure a real permanent happiness.
但是这并不意味着，好的婚姻就一定能够带来真正长久的幸福。

⑥ **However, there are many others who do not favor** the university campus being open to tourists. **In their opinions**, tourists will destroy the quiet environment and influence students' normal study. **Besides, they argue that** too many tourists will add a burden to the security department of the university.
然而，有许多人并不赞成大学校园对游客开放。他们认为，游客会破坏大学的安静环境并影响学生的正常学习。此外，他们认为，太多的游客会增加大学安保的负担。

三、典型段落操练

要求：请撰写下列作文，注意其中论证观点段或对比论证段的写法。

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Grades Can't Say Everything.** You should write at least 120 words and base your composition on the outline given below:

1. 分数并不说明一切。
2. 试举例论证。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Should Customers Buy Cut-price Products**? You should write at least 120 words and base your composition on the outline given below:

1. 现在许多人都喜欢买打折商品。
2. 而另一些人认为越是打折的商品越不能买。
3. 你怎样看？

参考范文

练习一

Grades Can't Say Everything

第一段：提出观点段

For years many people had such thought that grades is of great significance to students. Many of them just work hard with almost no play so as to get a satisfied grade. However, grades can't say everything.

第二段：论证观点段

The following reasons can support the argument. Undoubtedly, high grades don't mean that one is excellent in everything. A case in point is that one may has a poor academic performance but show a great talent in music. Furthermore, grades can be affected by many uncertain factors, like student's psychological state. For example, there are some excellent students who can't perform well just because they are too nervous. Besides, sometimes some students cheat to get high grades which account for nothing.

第三段：总结观点段

All mentioned above tell us that grades can't say everything. And it is only an indicator to evaluate one's comprehensive ability. Therefore, we should make a proper use of grades to assess students' ability.

练习二

Should Customers Buy Cut-price Products?

第一段：提出观点段

When asked whether customers should buy cut-price products, different people will offer different views. Some people take it for granted that they would like to buy cut-price products since a discount is a great appeal. However, others maintain that it's not a wise and rational idea to buy discount products.

第二段：对比论证段

Those people who hold the first opinion believe they can save themselves a lot of money. In addition, they can use less money to buy more products. However, still others do not agree this. In their opinions, the discount is merely a business means of attracting customers and enhancing their desire of purchasing. Besides, they argue that the discount always tempt customers to buy something unnecessary.

第三段：总结观点段

Weighing up these two arguments, I think customers should be alerter to cut-price products. For one thing, complaints about cut-price products rank first in recent days according to the newspaper. For another, cut-price products are usually not provided with an after-sales service like three guarantees for products. Considering these factors into consideration, we may reasonably conclude that customers should think carefully when buying cut-prices products.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Which Mode of Travel Do You Like?** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 有的人喜欢参加旅行团旅行。
2. 有的人喜欢自己独自旅行。
3. 你喜欢的是……

范文	点评
（1①）When it comes to travel mode，（1②）different people have different preferences.（2①）Some people are in favor of the package tour.（2②）However，others would like to travel on their own. （3）Those people who hold the first opinion believe package tour saves them a lot of trouble，（4）such as finding the accommodation.（5①）In addition，they say，package tour can relatively（6）ensure the safety of the tourists.（7）However，still others think differently. In their opinions，they can get（8）a greater degree of independence and freedom，and can take their time to（9）appreciate the views.（5②）Besides，they argue that it will cost（10①）less to travel on one's own（10②）than join package tours. （11）Weighing up these two arguments，I prefer to the latter one.（5③）For one thing，I do not have to obey the regulation set by the travel agency.（5④）For another，I can decide by myself（12①）when to start on my way，（12②）where to linger a little longer（12③）and which spot to skip over.（13）Considering all these，I think traveling on my own is a better mode of travel.	（1）引出有争议话题的常用句式。 （2）提出对立观点的常用句式。 （3）引出第一种观点的理由。 （4）表示列举。 （5）衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 （6）意为“确保，保证”。 （7）引出对相反观点的论证。 （8）意为“更大的自由度”。 （9）意为“欣赏”。 （10）注意比较结构的使用。 （11）用于表明自己的倾向。 （12）平行结构增加了文章的文采。 （13）意为“鉴于这些”，用于得出结论。

星期六　一周复习效果检验

Test 1

Directions: For this part，you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay to discuss the phenomenon of **young people's lacking the consciousness of gratefulness.** You should explain the causes of the problem and then discuss how to solve it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay explaining **why it is unwise to persist in something blindly.** You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the popularity of body-building.** You should explain different purposes of people taking part in the activities of body-building. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 4

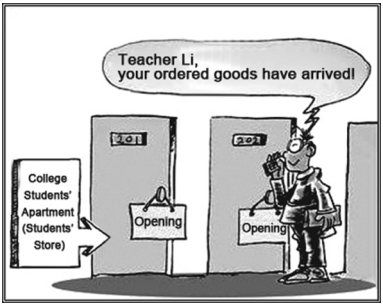
Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Parents' Being Slaves to Children.** You should start your essay with a brief description of the picture and then discuss why this phenomenon happens. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether we should believe that happiness lies in contentment.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief description of the picture and then discuss **whether college students should do business in the dormitory.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.



Test 7

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Travel Alone or Travel with a Companion**? Give your opinions and reasons. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 8

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Depression**. Give your opinions on the bad influence of depression and how to deal with it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

参考范文

Test 1

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述年轻人缺乏感恩意识这一问题；第二段分析感恩意识缺失的原因；第三段说明如何让年轻人学会感恩。

Learn to Be Grateful

第一段：概述问题段

Nowadays quite a few young people lack consciousness of being grateful. They tend to take such things for granted as parents' supporting them, teachers' helping them, and waiters' serving them. They are even mean to say "thank you". This phenomenon has caused great attention from the whole society.

第二段：说明原因段

The following points can account for the lack of gratefulness consciousness. First of all, unsound family education plays an important role. Most parents tend to pay too much attention to children's academic performance, but ignore their value

orientation. Moreover, schools don't input enough time and money in moral education. Besides, nowadays young people get so much love that they are insensitive to others' care and help.

第三段：说明方法段

Considering the seriousness of the problem, it is high time to take effective measures to strengthen young people's consciousness of being grateful. First, parents should improve self-quality and influence children by their own behaviors. Second, society and schools must increase input in moral education. Finally, we should learn to express our gratefulness to people around us, just beginning with a simple "thank you".

Test 2

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇论证观点类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段由"永不言弃"引出应该学会放弃的观点；第二段从正反两方面论证该观点；第三段重申适当放弃的必要性，总结全文。

Learn to Give up Wisely

第一段：提出观点段

"Never give up" has been accepted by many people as a positive life attitude. It is no denying that persistence often plays an important role in one's success. However, in many cases, to give up might be wiser than blind persistence.

第二段：论证观点段

The following reasons can support this argument. Firstly, sometimes our goal may be unrealistic. If we insist it blindly, it will finally bring us nothing but failure. At this time, we should give up the original goal and reset a more practical one. Secondly, not all persistence can bring deserving results. For a very simple example, if we keep waiting in line for hours only to have a lunch, maybe it is unworthy. Finally, to give up wisely do not mean admitting failure. Instead, it does mean a new hope of success.

第三段：总结观点段

Considering the above-mentioned, we can come to the conclusion that to give up wisely is a kind of more mature life attitude. Though giving up sometimes is painful and costly, in the long run, what we gain will definitely far outweigh what we lose.

Test 3

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述近年来人们热衷于参加健身俱乐部或健身中心的现象；第二段说明人们健身的主要目的；第三段谈谈“你”对健身的看法。

The Popularity of Body-building

第一段：概述现象段

In recent years, more and more people have joined in the body-building group. People begin to take part in various fitness clubs or fitness centers in their spare time. Body-building has become an indispensable part of many people's life.

第二段：说明原因段

Why are so many people keen on body-building? Firstly, keeping health is one of their main purposes. In modern society, many people work with their brains most of the day. They want to improve their health by body-building. Secondly, quite a few people, especially the women, go to the gym in order to keep a good figure. Many setting-up exercises like aerobics are very helpful in cutting up weight. Besides, body-building is a good way by which many people release pressure.

第三段：总结观点段

As far as I am concerned, the popularity of body-building will be a long-time trend. It shows people begin to pay more and more attention to life quality. As a fashionable, healthy life style, body-building will attract more and more people.

Test 4

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述目前社会上许多父母轮为“孩奴”的现象；第二段分析这种现象可能造成的影响；第三段说明出现这种现象的原因。

Parents' Being Slaves to Children

第一段：描述图画段

As can be seen in the picture, the whole family including grandpas and grandmas are supporting a child. The picture reflects a kind of hot phenomenon in Chinese society that many parents become their “children's slaves”.

第二段：说明影响段

Young parents spend a large part of their income and energy on children, and

in many cases these young parents have to turn to their old parents, just as the above picture describes. The burden of raising a child not only pose great financial pressure on these young parents but also might threaten their physical and mental health, and even their marriages.

第三段：说明原因段

In my opinion, the appearance of a "child's slave" is the result of the following factors. For one thing, the cost of raising a child in China has been on rise, while young parents' incomes are limited. For another, Chinese old tradition of spoiling a child has to be blamed. Parents compete with each other in trying to provide the best possible living conditions for their children. Their expenditure on children is sometimes even beyond their means.

Test 5

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段提出两种对立观点：知足常乐和不满足于现状才能进步；第二段对比阐述两种观点各自的理由；第三段表明个人倾向并阐述理由。

Does Happiness Lie in Contentment?

第一段：提出观点段

There is an old saying which goes "Happiness lies in contentment". Some people take it as a doctrine and believe they should learn to be content with their present situation, while others maintain that only discontentment can bring constant improvement.

第二段：对比论证段

Those who hold the former opinion say that one person, who is content with profits and position he has gotten, has a more peaceful state of mind and knows more about how to enjoy life. Also, in their opinions, contentment can hold back one's greed and evil desires. However, many others do not agree this. They think that being satisfied with things as they are will make one accept mediocrity and lose initiative, and finally lead to unhappiness but not happiness.

第三段：总结观点段

Weighing these two arguments, I prefer the latter one. From my point of view, contentment can not bring permanent happiness, and "happiness lies in contentment" is an excuse of those lazy and coward people. Besides, discontentment is a motivation to promote further improvement. Therefore, we should never be content with our present achievement but should improve ourselves constantly.

Test 6

Should College Students Do Business in the Dormitory?

第一段：描述图画段

As we can see from the picture, a students' store is opening for business, and a student is informing his customer of the arrival of the goods he ordered. The picture reflects a kind of phenomenon on campus that some college students with a good business sense have started their own businesses in the dormitory, like a grocery store or a duplicating shop.

第二段：说明利弊段

It is no doubt that doing business brings about some benefits to these students. They can earn more money to ease the burden of their families. What's more, it makes them become more independent and understand parents' hardships. However, doing business do some harm to the students. Above all, spending too much time on business will influence normal study. Besides, since the dormitory does not belong to one individual, one's business might disturb the others, which will lead to the disharmonious atmosphere.

第三段：总结观点段

In my opinion, college students' starting a business should be allowed and supported since they can get benefits from it. But it is worth noting that those students shouldn't ignore their study and should try to avoid disturbing other students.

Test 7

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出人们对旅行方式的不同偏好：有人喜欢独自旅行，有人喜欢结伴旅行；第二段对比阐述独自旅行和结伴旅行各自的好处；第三段表明“你”更喜欢于哪种旅行方式，并说明理由。

Travel Alone or Travel with a Companion?

第一段：提出观点段

When it comes to traveling way, different people will offer different opinions. Some people like to travel alone, while others prefer to travel with a companion. Of course, everyone has his consideration for his preference.

第二段：对比论证段

Traveling alone, one can enjoy more freedom. The traveler can arrange his tour as he wishes without the trouble of humoring others. Moreover, traveling alone tends to bring the traveler unexpected surprise, such as making a new friend and enjoying a different scenery. Compared with traveling alone, traveling with a companion has also its advantages. For one thing, the group members can help and look after each other in the journey. For another, traveling with others who have the same interest, he can share costs and experiences with them.

第三段：总结观点段

As for me, I prefer to travel with a companion. Firstly, we can deal with possible problems and difficulties in the journey. Secondly, I like to share the pleasure of traveling with others. In sum, both traveling alone and traveling with a companion have their attractions, and you can find the pleasure from either one.

Test 8

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述近年来患抑郁症的人越来越多的问题现状及主要原因；第二段说明抑郁症带来的危害；第三段说明人们应该如何摆脱抑郁症。

Depression

第一段：概述问题段

In recent years more and more people have suffered from depression. With the increasingly fierce competition, more and more people are taking great pressure from study, work and life. Under great pressure, many people begin to become sad, hopeless and finally suffer from depression.

第二段：说明危害段

Depression has brought great bad influence on one's study, work and life. In fact, depression affects not only one's mind but also his body. Those with severe depression even cannot work or carry out normal activities. They might have feelings of sadness, hopelessness, not wanting food and trouble sleeping. Besides, depression has been linked to other disorders, including heart disease. What's worse, depression is one of the main reasons that people kill themselves.

第三段：说明方法段

Considering the bad effects of depression, it must be taken more seriously. First of all, the patients with depression should accept treatment timely instead of covering or ignoring the disease. Actually, the best treatment is a combination of medication and psychological help. Besides, people should learn to release pressure and relax themselves.

第五周
灵活变换句式，瞄准用词亮点，突破14分

灵活变换长句短句、主动被动、强调倒装等各类句式，巧妙运用限定词语、动态名词、抽象名词等亮点词语，谙熟并牢记100个四级写作闪光句式和用词，可为您的作文锦上添花，在考试中博得高分。

星期一　把握组句技巧和用词原则

一篇文章要有合理的组织结构以外，更重要的是要有合理、多变的句式和规范、准确的用词。遣词造句能力是体现学生语言功底的基本技能，是考生写出高质量文章的保证。

一、组句技巧

1 句子应紧凑连贯

句子中各成分之间要衔接紧密、连贯并富有条理。我们可以通过关联词语引导从句或并列句来体现句子的内部关系，也可适当使用分词结构和一些独立的短语或是插入语成分来代替从句。此外，句子之间还要注意指代、时态、语态、人称和数等方面的连贯和一致。

如： 原句：Teenagers are pressured by school work and they are also encouraged by their peers, and under these, they resort to smoking, and sometimes they feel a little guilty.

优化：**Pressured** by school work **and encouraged** by their peers, teenagers often resort to smoking, **though** they feel a little guilty sometimes.（优化后的句子结构紧凑、意思连贯）

原句：The following ways can be adopted to improve **our** study efficiency. First, **you** should make a detailed study plan.

优化：The following ways can be adopted to improve **our** study efficiency. First，**we** should make a detailed study plan.（改成 we 后与前面的 our 在人称上做到一致）

2 句式应有变化

一篇文章要使人觉得内容丰富、语言生动，就应该重视句式的变化，如主动句和被动句搭配使用、适当穿插倒装句和强调句等特殊句式。另外，不要一味地使用常见的“主语＋谓语”的开头方式，可以适当搭配以分词、副词等开头的句式。

如：原句：They say that people obtain most of their knowledge through reading extensively.

优化：They say that **it is** through reading extensively **that** people obtain most of their knowledge.（优化成强调句）

原句：The competition is becoming increasingly fierce，so it is more difficult to find a job than before.

优化：**With the competition becoming increasingly fierce**，it is more difficult to find a job than before.（介词短语开头）

3 句子表达要简洁

造句时，要注意避免赘言重复。只要意思表达清楚，多余的词语就没有必要了。有时有的考生纯粹为了凑字数，加上了一些不必要的成分，导致语义含混不清、啰唆冗长。

如：原句：I think *Gone with the Wind* is one of those good films which I enjoyed watching very much.

优化：*Gone with the Wind* is a film I enjoyed very much. /I enjoyed the film *Gone with the Wind* very much.（将多余的成分去掉后，句子表达更加简洁）

4 长短句要结合

在写作中，一味地采用长句或短句都是不可取的，要将简单句和带有衔接词的复杂句交替使用，这样才能够使文章句式丰富，富有节奏感。

5 少用问句，尽量不用感叹句和祈使句

有些考生喜欢开篇问一连串的问题，想以此引起阅卷老师的注意。一般来讲，一篇作文中可以偶尔出现 1～2 个问句，太多则会适得其反。

感叹句和祈使句多用于口语之中，不太适宜在四级的书面写作中出现。尽

管在抒发感情和发出呼吁时也可以使用，但多数考生对这两种句式的把握能力不够，因此建议考生尽量不要使用。

二、用词原则

1 用词要简洁

能一个词表达清楚的意思，就不要加上多余的成分，另外还要注意不要造成意义上的重复累赘。

如：原句：What you have done is **illegal under the law**.

优化：What you have done is **illegal**.

2 用词要多样

注意不要一味地重复使用某个词汇，可适当转换成同义词或短语。也不要一味地使用同一种词性，要学会使用不同的词性。

如：原句：This can definitely **make them work more enthusiastically**.

优化：This can definitely **stimulate their working enthusiasm**.

3 多用朴素、易懂的词

对考生来说，生僻或华丽的辞藻驾驭起来比较难，很容易使用不当，很多时候不但不能给文章增色，反而可能会使阅卷老师困惑，起到负面作用。因此，建议考生在写作时尽量选用自己熟悉的词语。

如：原句：Parents in China always have **altercations** about their children's education.

优化：Parents in China always have **quarrels** about their children's education.

4 多用具体的词

如果词的概括性太强，往往让人觉得抽象、笼统，会给人模糊不清的感觉，词义比较具体的词会使表达更加准确、生动。

如：原句：Some people like to **read the newspaper very quickly** and try to find some interesting stories.

优化：Some people like to **flip through the newspaper** and try to find some interesting stories.

5 注意使用限定词

在写作时适当使用限定词来修饰可以使论述更加客观、适度，避免观点的

绝对化。

如：**In general**, young people seem more prone to job-hopping.

Nowadays the increasingly severe employment situation is **perhaps** the biggest challenge facing college students.

三、典型真题词句点评

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Reading Selectively or Extensively**? You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 有人认为读书要有选择。
2. 有人认为应当博览群书。
3. 你的看法。

范文	点评
(1) When it comes to reading way, there is no complete agreement among people. (2①) Some people (3①) take it for granted that reading should be selective. (2②) However, others (3②) maintain that it (4①) does more good to read extensively. (5①) Those people who hold the first opinion (3③) believe reading selectively can save much time and (6) enable them to have enough time to (7) digest (8) what they have read. (9①) In addition, they (3④) insist that books of low quality (10①) may (4②) do harm to the youths (11①) who lack enough ability to tell the true from the false. (5②) However, still others think differently. (3⑤) In their opinions, students cannot get a general view about the world (12) without extensive reading. (9②) Besides, extensive reading can (13) extend their range of knowledge and broaden their vision.	**句式上：**本文长短句搭配合理，句式富于变化，句子之间和句子内部紧凑连贯，句子表达简洁明快。 **用词上：**本文用词简洁具体，富于变化，词性多样，体现出较强的语言驾驭能力。 (1) 用于引出有争议的话题时常用的句式。 (2) 用于提出两种对立观点时常用的句式。 (3) 用不同的词表示“认为”，用词富于变化。 (4) 前者意为“有好处”，后者意为“有害处”。 (5) 用于引出每一种观点的理由。 (6) 意为“使……能够”。 (7) 意为“消化”，用词形象生动。 (8) what引导宾语从句。 (9) 列举时常用的衔接词语，使文章条理清晰。 (10) 使用限定词，使表达更加客观。 (11) 注意定语从句的运用。

(14) Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer the former one. (9③) For one thing, (15) as a college student, we should choose those books (16) suitable to our reading level. (9④) For another, (17①) without selection, our reading (10②) may become (17②) aimless and blind, (11②) which will be (18) less efficient. (19) Considering these, we (10③) may reasonably conclude that college students should read selectively.	(12) 介词短语“without…”相当于条件从句。 (13) 意为“拓宽知识面和视野”。 (14) 用于表明个人倾向，动名词短语开头。 (15) 介词短语开头，句式富于变化。 (16) 形容词短语做后置定语。 (17) 形容词使用恰当。 (18) 比较级使用恰当。 (19) 用于得出结论，动名词短语开头。

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: In this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Say No to Pirated Products**. You should write at least 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 目前盗版的现象比较严重。
2. 造成这种现象的原因及危害。
3. 我们应该怎么做？

范文	点评
Nowadays piracy (1) is becoming more and more of a problem in China. Almost any product, (2) such as tape, CD and hi-tech device, can be copied. (3) Shortly after a (4) newly-developed product is put on the market, people will (5) unsurprisingly find its pirated (6) counterparts in the stores. (7①) It should be paid attention to that piracy causing great harm. (8①) On the one hand, pirated products often sell well (9①) due to their (10) unbeatable advantage in price (11) in spite of their relatively poor quality, and the	(1) 引出问题时常用的句式。 (2) 插入语，表示列举。 (3) 意为“……之后不久”。 (4) 复合形容词，意为“新开发的”。 (5) 副词使用恰当，意为“毫不令人惊奇地”。 (6) 意为“相似之物”。 (7) 被动语态使用恰当。 (8) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (9) 表示原因的不同短语。 (10) 意为“无可比拟的价格优势”。

original ones,（12）on the contrary, sell poorly.（8②）On the other hand, pirated products may also（13）have negative impacts on customers（14）since those legitimate producers' enthusiasm（7②）may be greatly hurt（9②）as a result of money loss.（8③）Therefore,（15）it is high time that we took measures to solve the problem（16）as soon as possible. （8④）First of all, stricter laws and regulations should be（17）issued to punish piracy behaviors.（8⑤）Moreover,（18）as customers, we should（19）develop our consciousness to resist pirated products.（20）Only in this way can this problem be solved radically.	（11）意为“尽管”。 （12）插入语，意为“相反”。 （13）意为“对……有负面影响”。 （14）since引导原因状语从句。 （15）引出解决办法时常用的句式，意为“该是……的时候了”。 （16）意为“尽可能快”。 （17）意为“发布，颁布”。 （18）介词短语开头。 （19）意为“培养我们……意识”。 （20）“only + 状语”位于句首引起倒装。

星期二　如何合理搭配长短句

在实际写作中，一味地采用长句或短句都是不可取的，长短句应交替使用。英语的句子主要可分为简单句、并列句和复合句三种。一般来说，写作中是以简单句为基础，配以适当的并列句和复合句。简单句也可长可短，一般会加些附属成分，如分词短语、不定式短语、介词短语和副词短语等。

一、长句的用法

长句含有许多修饰语，适合表达准确而复杂的思想，解释观点或理论，描写细致的事物。写作时，考生要注意前后句子之间是否存在联系，善于发现简单句之间的关联，用恰当的连接词将简单句连接起来，组成准确地道的复杂长句，增加文章的气势。

如： 原句：Lies do harm to those who are being told. Lies also do harm to those who tell them.

优化：Lies **not only** do harm to those who are being told, **but also** do harm to those who tell them.

原句：Natural resources are very limited. They will be exhausted in the near

future. It is not true. But it becomes a major concern around the world. This is a widely accepted fact.

优化：**It is widely accepted fact that** there is a major concern around the world **for the exhaustion** of limited natural resources in the near future, **though** it is unlikely to be true.

二、短句的用法

长句固然能表达出复杂而缜密的思想，但如果片面追求复杂句式，华而不实，反而成为表达的累赘。因此，写作中句子的长短应根据表达的需要，有话则长，无话则短。

短句比较简洁、明快、有力，适合陈述重要的事实或想法。短句不仅指句子长度较短，也指句子内部结构精炼。

如： 原句：Many automobile parts that are made of plastics and other synthetic materials do not last long.

优化：Many automobile parts **made of** plastics and other synthetic materials do not last long.

原句：He didn't have enough experience, which is the reason why he didn't do the work well.

优化：He didn't do the work well **for lack of experience**.

三、长短句变换练习

要求：将下列长句或短句进行优化改写，使其更符合表达需求。

1. If students who wish to have overseas academic experience have got the chances and financial resources, they should seize the opportunity to go abroad and broaden their vision, while if conditions don't permit them to go abroad, they can pursue their studies at top universities in our country.
2. China's seven-day Labor Day and the National Day holidays now is entering their seventh. The possibility of cancelling the holidays, usually called "Golden Week", has become a widely discussed topic.
3. They argue that "Golden Week" is very effective. It introduces the idea of vacation travel to Chinese.
4. Firstly, a lot of visitors swarm into scenic spots suddenly. It will bring environmental stress.
5. The meaning of his statement is that he is of the opinion that the death penalty should be allowed.

6. Thirdly, after "Golden Week", the number of tourists declines greatly. It results in the serious imbalance in travel industry. It does not really boost travel industry in a long run.
7. We need more flexible holidays. Thus we can satisfy the traveling desire of Chinese people. At the same time, we can avoid huge consumption imbalance between the "Golden Week" and usual times.
8. People who choose to further their studies abroad insist that if they go to study overseas they can get many benefits in different ways.
9. The place where they study is not very important for them, and instead, it is what they can learn that is the most important.
10. Second, if they complete part or all of their education overseas, they can gain a broader or different perspective on their field of study.

参考答案

1. If students who wish to have overseas academic experience have got the chances and financial resources, they should seize the opportunity to go abroad and broaden their vision. **On the other hand**, if conditions don't permit, they can pursue their studies at top universities in our country.
2. **With** China's seven-day Labor Day and the National Day holidays now **entering** their seventh, the possibility of cancelling the holidays, usually called "Golden Week" has become a widely discussed topic.
3. They argue that "Golden Week" **is very effective in introducing** the idea of vacation travel to Chinese.
4. Firstly, **the sudden swarming** of visitors will bring environmental stress on scenic spots.
5. **He thinks that** the death penalty should be allowed.
6. Thirdly, after "Golden Week", the number of tourists declines greatly, **which** results in the serious imbalance in travel industry **instead of** really boosting travel industry in a long run.
7. We need more flexible holidays **to satisfy** the traveling desire of Chinese people **and avoid** huge consumption imbalance between the "Golden Week" and usual times.
8. People who choose to further their studies abroad insist that **overseas study can benefit them in different ways**.
9. **What counts is not** the place where they study**, but** what they can learn**.** / **It is not** the place where they study **but** what they can learn **that counts.**
10. Second, **completing part or all of their education overseas helps them gain** a broader or different perspective on their field of study.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Your Attitude Towards Criticism.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 每个人都可能会受到别人的批评。
2. 不同的人对待批评的态度是不同的。
3. 你怎么看待别人对你的批评？

范文	点评
Every one of us may be criticized by others in our life. (1) For example, (2①) workers who fail to accomplish their tasks may be criticized by their employer; (2②) students who have poor performance in exams may be criticized by their teachers and parents. (3) However, attitudes towards criticism (4) differ from person to person. (5①) Some people will become annoyed, and will try to defend themselves (6) by all means. (5②) Some people may (7) be indifferent to criticism. They just regard criticism as nonsense. (5③) But other people accept criticism modestly and find their shortcomings from others' criticism, (8) who (9) tend to (10) stand a good chance of success. As for me, I welcome others' criticism. I have always believed that old Chinese saying (11) "Good medicine that tastes bitter will help one's illness". In my opinion, (12) though criticism will make us unhappy, it can help us know our shortcomings and inadequacy. Therefore, we should (13) place more emphasis on others' criticism, (14) instead of being annoyed with or (15) turn a deaf ear to it.	(1) 举例说明。 (2) 排比句，结构相同，增加气势。 (3) 转折引出对批评的不同态度，使上下文过渡自然，衔接紧密。 (4) 意为"各人不同"。 (5) 列举了不同人的不同态度。 (6) 意为"尽一切办法，务必"。 (7) 意为"无动于衷，漠不关心"。 (8) who引导非限制性定语从句。 (9) 意为"易于……，有……倾向"。 (10) 意为"很有可能，大有机会"。 (11) 引用谚语"良药苦口利于病"。 (12) though引导让步状语从句。 (13) 意为"更加强调或重视"。 (14) 意为"而不是"。 (15) 意为"充耳不闻，置之不理"。

星期三　如何制造亮点句式

一篇文章如果反复使用同一句式，就会显得单调无味、毫无生气，因此写作时一定要注意句式变换，今天我们的任务就是学会如何制造亮点句式，把作文变得丰富多彩、充满生气。

一、倒装句和强调句

1 什么是倒装句

句子成分在句子中都有一定的位置，但有时为了修饰原因，可以把某些句子成分前后倒置，以达到突出强调的作用。英语中倒装主要有两种：全部倒装和部分倒装。

（1）全部倒装是指主语和谓语完全倒置，常用于记叙或描写。

（2）部分倒装是指只将助动词提到主语前面，而主要动词仍然保留在原来的位置上，常用于议论或说明。

如：原句：By reading widely, he can really make remarkable achievements in his study.

优化：**Only by reading widely can he** really make remarkable achievements in his study.

2 什么是强调句

写作中，常使用强调句来达到突出重点的目的。强调句的基本结构是：It is（was）+被强调的部分+that（who）+句子其他成分。

如：原句：Not how much you read but what you read really matters.

优化：**It is** not how much you read but what you read **that** really matters.

二、含有插入语的句子

插入语是一种独立成分，通常与句中其他成分没有语法上的关系，将它删掉之后，句子结构仍然完整。插入语大都是对一句话进行附加说明或解释，通常由一个词、一个短语或一个句子构成，常置于句首、句中或句末，一般用逗号或破折号与句子隔开。插入语有时表达说话者的态度和看法，有时起强调的

作用，有时是为了引起对方的注意，有时起转移话题或说明事由的作用，有时还可以承上启下，使句子衔接得更紧密。

写作中常用到的插入语包括：

副词和副词短语：indeed（的确），surely（无疑），however（然而），frankly（坦率地说），obviously（显然），naturally（天然地），luckily/happily for sb.（算某人幸运），fortunately（幸好），strangely（奇怪地），briefly（简单地说），personally（依个人之见）。

形容词或形容词短语：true（真的），funny（可笑的），needless to say（不用说），most important of all（最为重要），worse still（更糟糕的），even better（更好）。

介词短语：in conclusion（总之），in a word（简而言之），in short/in brief（简而言之），in general（一般说来），in a sense（在某种意义上），in one's view（在某人看来），in one's opinion（按照某人的看法），in fact（事实上），at first（首先），in addition（此外），of course（当然），to one's surprise（使某人惊奇的是），to one's regret（使某人遗憾的是），for example（例如），on the contrary（相反），in other words（换句话说），on the other hand（另一方面）。

分词短语：strictly speaking（严格地说），generally considering（一般认为），considering/taking… into consideration（考虑到，鉴于），judging from（根据……判断）。

不定式短语：to be sure（无疑），to sum up（概括地说），to tell the truth（说实话），to be frank/to be honest（说实在的，老实说），to make matters worse（更糟的是），to start with/to begin with（首先，第一）。

简短的句子：I am sure（我可以肯定地说），I believe/think（我相信），do you know（你知道吗），you see（你明白），I'm afraid（恐怕），it is said（据说），I suppose（我想），what's more（而且），what's worse（更糟糕的是），that is to say（也就是说），what is important（重要的是）。

如： 原句：I think that computer games can also do some good to young people.

优化：Computer games, **in my opinion**, can also do some good to young people.

原句：The above-mentioned show that it is no doubt that college students should often attend sports activities.

优化：**Considering the above-mentioned**, it is no doubt that college students should often attend sports activities.

三、含有平行结构的句子

平行结构指的是将结构相同或相似、意义并重、语气一致的语言成分并行

排列的一种修辞手法。这种结构层次清晰、语意顺畅，能够起到加强语气、增强表达效果的作用。

如：原句：This phenomenon, in my opinion, has upgraded the quality of people's life. And it has also improved the value of consumption of our modern society.

优化：This phenomenon, in my opinion, has **not only** upgraded the quality of people's life **but also** improved the value of consumption of our modern society.

原句：Many people get up early to jog along country lanes, or in order to observe the wonder of nature. And some also just watch the sun rise.

优化：Many people get up early **to jog** along country lanes, **to observe** the wonder of nature, **or just to watch** the sun rise.

四、含有非谓语动词的句子

非谓语动词包括：动词不定式、动名词、现在分词和过去分词。使用非谓语动词可以用较少的词表达同等甚至更加丰富的信息，使句子结构紧凑、逻辑严谨。

如：原句：It must be realized that people should be cautious when they decide which books they should choose to read since if they read bad books, it will be time-wasting and harmful.

优化：It must be realized that people should be cautious **when deciding which books to read** since **reading bad books** is time-wasting and harmful.

原句：Because one of my parents is laid off, my family can't possibly afford all my expenses at college.

优化：**With one of my parents being laid off**, my family can't possibly afford all my expenses at college.

五、含有谚语格言的句子

如果能在作文中恰当地引用1~2句谚语格言，将会增加作文的表现力，展示出作者的语言功底，有助于获得阅卷老师的青睐。但需要注意的是，不要引用过于生僻或自己不太熟悉的谚语格言，否则引用不当，反而会适得其反。另外，谚语格言并不是越多越好，一般来说，一篇作文引用一句就可以了，最多不要超过两句。

如：原句：Doing part-time jobs has its disadvantages.

优化：**Every coin has two sides**. So does doing part-time jobs.

原句：Last but not the least, you need an intense interest in learning English.

优化：Last but not the least, you need an intense interest in learning English since **"interest is the best teacher"**.

六、亮点句式改写练习

1. Humor can help us ease tension, and also can overcome our frustration. In addition, dissolving countless irritations is the function of humor.（改写句子使其包含平行结构）
2. When I look into the future, I will try my best to serve my fellow students if I am lucky enough to be President of the Student Union.（用非谓语动词改写时间状语从句）
3. Whether a piece of work is hard or not, it requires patience and firmness for completion.（改写句子使其包含插入语）
4. In this way public property can be well preserved and put into better use.（将句子改写成倒装句）
5. We should not throw a burning match or cigarette butts into a waste-basket. And placing a lighted candle near curtains is also foolish. Moreover, we should not fail to extinguish a flaming fire.（改写句子使其包含平行结构）
6. It must be realized that people should be cautious when they decide which books they should choose to read since if they read bad books, it will be time-wasting and harmful.（用非谓语动词改写从句部分）
7. Fake commodities not only can disturb the normal marketing order, but also may threaten people's health and lives.（将句子改写成倒装句）
8. If either of them can be a little more tolerant, I think that this quarrel can be avoided easily.（改写句子使其包含插入语）
9. We have grown so old because the birthrate fell earlier in Western and Northwestern Europe than elsewhere, rather than because of any change in the death rate.（将句子改写成强调句）
10. I wish all of you to enjoy yourselves during this trip.（用古语"有朋自远方来，不亦乐乎"改写）
11. Some big factories which are armed with advanced machines and technology may neglect to reuse the large quantity of waste matter that is produced in the manufacturing process.（用非谓语动词改写定语从句）
12. Time is so precious that we can't afford to waste it.（将句子改写倒装句）
13. Her talent but not her look really works in her career development.（将句子改写强调句）

14. Millions of people have been killed by these disasters. They also destroyed countless homes, wiping out numerous pieces of fertile land.（改写句子使其包含平行结构）

参考答案

1. Humor can help us **ease** our tension, **overcome** our frustration **and dissolve** our countless irritations.
2. **Looking into the future**, I will try my best to serve my fellow students if I am lucky enough to be President of the Student Union.
3. A piece of work, **whether hard or not**, requires patience and firmness for completion.
4. **Only in this way can public property** be well preserved and put into better use.
5. **Throwing** a burning match or cigarette butts into a wastebasket, **placing** a lighted candle near curtains, **or failing** to extinguish a flaming fire is a foolish thing to do.
6. It must be realized that people should be cautious **when deciding which books to read** since **reading bad books** is time-wasting and harmful.
7. **Not only** can the fake commodities disturb the normal marketing order, **but also** may threaten people's health and lives.
8. If either of them can be a little more tolerant, this quarrel, **I think**, can be avoided easily.
9. **It is** because the birthrate fell earlier in Western and Northwestern Europe than elsewhere, rather than because of any change in the death rate, **that** we have grown so old.
10. **Just as the old saying goes, "It is such a delight to have friends coming from afar!"** I wish all of you to enjoy yourselves during this trip.
11. Some big factories, **armed with advanced machines and technology**, may neglect to reuse the large quantity of waste matter **produced** in the manufacturing process.
12. **So precious is time** that we can't afford to waste it.
13. **It is** her talent but not her look **that** really works in her career development.
14. These disasters have **killed** millions upon millions of people, **destroyed** countless homes, **and wiped out** numerous pieces of fertile land.

七、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Making All Decisions for Children.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 很多家长习惯于替孩子做决定，如选择学校，选择工作等。
2. 分析这种现象给孩子带来的影响。
3. 你的看法是……

范文

In modern society, traditional patriarchy is still influencing Chinese parents. They (1) tend to make almost all decisions for their children, (2①) from (3①) choosing schools (2②) to (3②) picking up a profession. (2③) Sometimes even many detailed things (4) such as clothing and diets have to be decided by parents.

(5) However, deciding everything for children does (6①) not help them (6②) but harm them in many ways. (7①) On the one hand, it will make children lack independence and initiative, (8) which (9) is unfavorable to their development (10) in the long run. (7②) On the other hand, in many cases, parents' decisions are not always (11) in accordance with their children's personal ideas and interest. It will make children form resistance and naturally influence their growth.

(12) From my point of view, (13①) it is unwise for parents to make every decision for their children. (13②) It is obvious that parents cannot accompany their children all the time. Growing to be independent is the natural way for everybody. Therefore, parents should give their children rights to make their own decisions. They can help their children (14) but not replace them to make choices.

点评

(1) 意为“易于……，有……倾向”。
(2) 针对 all decisions 作进一步说明，富有层次感。
(3) 都表示“选择”，用词富于变化。
(4) 表示列举。
(5) 转折引出下文，使上下文过渡自然、衔接紧密。
(6) 意为“不是……而是”，用于连接并列成分。
(7) 意为“一方面，……。另一方面，……”。
(8) which 引导非限制性定语从句。
(9) 意为“不利于”。
(10) 意为“从长远来看”。
(11) 意为“与……一致”。
(12) 用于引出个人观点。
(13) it 充当形式主语。
(14) 意为“而不是，而不要”。

星期四　如何制造亮点词语

一篇文章要想吸引阅卷老师的眼球，给人眼前一亮的感觉，没有地道准确的用词是不行的。今天我们的任务就是学会如何制造亮点词语，让自己的遣词更形象、更生动，使自己的作文亮起来、炫起来。

一、选用具体的词

和具有一般含义的词汇相比，具体词汇能够使语言表达更加准确、形象和生动。比如，good food 和 tasty/ delicious/ fresh food 相比，显然，后面的具体词汇更富有表现力。

但是，受汉语表达习惯的影响，很少考生能用具体的词汇表达复杂的概念。这就暴露出考生对语言的驾驭能力不够。因此，考生在进行写作训练时，要有意识地选用比较具体的词汇，增强语言的表现力，为文章增加亮点。

如： 原句：No one **saw** the bank being broken into.

优化：No one **witnessed** the bank being broken into.

原句：Sometimes women are still **made unable to have** equal rights in modern society.

优化：Sometimes women are still **denied** equal rights in modern society.

二、恰当使用限定词

限定词的使用能使论述更加客观、适度，避免观点的绝对化，提高说服力和可信度。

写作中常见的限定词有：may，maybe，perhaps，probably，mainly，generally，commonly，personally，comparatively，typically，usually，sometimes，often，most，mostly，nearly，almost，not necessarily，in general，at least，at most，may as well，if possible，had better，to some extent，to some degree，more often than not，for the most part 等。

如： 原句：I don’t agree with the first argument.

优化：I don’t agree with the first argument **to some extent**.

原句：The first appearance will determine the moder fate.

优化：The first appearance **more often than not** will determine the applicant’s fate.

三、注意区分近义词

由于英语词义范畴非常广泛，即便是近义词或同义词也只是某种程度上的近似，不可能在意义上完全对等。这就需要考生在选词时斟酌其含义的微妙差别，辨析同义词在具体语境中的不同用法。

如：原句：So there arises the **problem**: Will electronic books replace traditional books?（指“实际存在的问题”或“需要解决的现实问题”，不符合此处语境）

优化：So there arises the **question**: Will electronic books replace traditional books?（指“可获得解释或回答的问题”）

原句：After a good dinner together, all the guests relaxed and became quite **careless**.（指“漫不经心的，粗心的”，不符合语境）

优化：After a good dinner together, all the guests relaxed and became quite **familiar**.（指“随便的，熟悉的”）

四、学会使用动态动词

动态动词往往比 be，there be，make，need 等静态动词更有活力，可以达到更好的写作效果。

如：原句：Please try our best to help this girl, help her to pass the most difficult period in life, and **make** her financial burden **less and less**.

优化：Please try our best to help this girl, help her to pass the most difficult period in life, and **relieve** her financial burden.

原句：Each day, we can see **there are** a lot of foods in the garbage cans.

优化：Each day, we can see many students **dump** foods in the garbage cans.

五、学会活用不同的词性

很多考生受汉语思维的影响，经常完全依据汉语的词性对译英文，导致造出来的句子十分生硬、死板。因此，考生在平时训练时一定要注意摆脱汉语思维的束缚，学会根据具体的语境活用不同的词类，这样才能写出地道生动的句子。

如：原句：After we have **observed** them **carefully** and **analyzed** them **critically**, we may identify the conceptions that will actually contribute to the social development.

优化：Through **careful observation and critical analysis**, we may identify the conceptions that will actually contribute to the social development.

原句：Environmental pollution will make it **impossible** for human beings to survive on the earth.

优化：Environmental pollution will deprive human beings of the **possibilities** to survive on the earth.

六、学会使用介词短语

英语中有很多介词短语都具有动词的特征，适合表达抽象的含义。学会活用这些介词短语不但可以丰富文章的用词，而且能够增强文章的表现力。另外，我们经常可以用介词短语代替从句，从而使语言表达更加简洁有力。

如：原句：His family obviously **cannot afford** the big sum of money for such an operation obviously.

优化：The big sum of money for such an operation is obviously **beyond what his family can afford**.

原句：Pirated products often cost much less than the original ones, so they enjoy unbeatable advantage in price **though their quality is relatively poor.**

优化：Pirated products often cost much less than the original ones, so they enjoy unbeatable advantage in price **despite their relatively poor quality**.

七、亮点词语改写练习

1. I'd like to make every effort to **let more people know** the idea that waste is disgraceful, and call on all my schoolmates to fight against waste.（用更动态的动词改写）
2. I'm sure you will soon find a **good** candidate for the position in that a few people are more suitable for it than I. （用更具体的词替换）
3. People **who are good at dealing with** social relations admit their mistakes, and take their share of blame. （用介词短语改写）
4. That capital punishment being **abolished** will benefit the harmony of the society.（用不同的词性改写）
5. If students develop the habit of waste, it will undoubtedly **become a heavy burden on** their parents. （用更动态的动词改写）
6. Above all, it teaches us that we shouldn't **have a strong wish to get** quick results.（用更具体的短语替换）

7. We shall only follow those conceptions that will **contribute** to the social development.（用不同的词性改写）
8. Opponents say capital punishment does not **effect** murder rates, but only **arouses** unhealthy interest in executions.（用恰当的近义词替换）
9. **If we combine all people's knowledge**, we can bring out a better solution as soon as possible.（用介词短语改写）
10. However, though celebrities are glamorous, they lead very stressful lives.（加上限定词，使表达更加客观）
11. Nuclear proliferation is always the top **problem** the participants have to discuss at this kind of meeting.（用恰当的近义词替换）
12. For one thing, celebrities don't **own** the privacy an ordinary person has.
13. College students cannot strike a balance between study and their part-time jobs.（加上限定词，使表达更加客观）
14. The team can be helpful with my questions and problems, thus **making my work efficiency become higher**.（用更动态的动词改写）

参考答案

1. I'd like to make every effort to **publicize** the idea that waste is disgraceful, and call on all my schoolmates to fight against waste.
2. I'm sure you will soon find a **well-qualified** candidate for the position in that a few people are more suitable for it than I.
3. People **with skill in** social relations admit their mistakes, and take their share of blame.
4. The **abolishment** of capital punishment will benefit the harmony of the society.
5. If students develop the habit of waste, it will undoubtedly **burden** their parents **heavily**.
6. Above all, it teaches us that we shouldn't **be over-anxious for** quick results.
7. We shall only follow those **contributive** conceptions to the social development.
8. Opponents say capital punishment does not **affect** murder rates, but only **arouses** unhealthy interest in executions.
9. **With the combination of all people's knowledge**, we can bring out a better solution as soon as possible.
10. However, though **to some extent** celebrities are glamorous, **most of them** lead very stressful lives.
11. Nuclear proliferation is always the top issue the participants have to discuss at this kind of meeting.
12. For one thing, celebrities don't **have** the privacy an ordinary person has.
13. College students, **for the most part**, cannot strike a balance between study and

their part-time jobs.

14. The team can be helpful with my questions and problems, thus **increasing my work efficiency**.

八、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Young People Should Have Ideals**. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 人，尤其是年轻人应该有理想。
2. 理想对于一个人的意义。
3. 我们应该如何实现自己的理想？

范文	点评
（1）“What are you going to do when you grow up?” When I was a child, people often asked me this question about ideal. （2）Undoubtedly, every individual, （3）especially a young person, should have an ideal. （4）Hardly can we find any great people with no ideal when they were young. An ideal （5）is of vital importance to one's growth and success. （6①）On the one hand, an ideal is the target of one's life. （7）Once you decide what your ideal is, you know （8）where to go and which way to take. （6②）On the other hand, an ideal is （9）like the engine of vehicles. （10）Only when we have our own ideals, can we find （11）the origin of energy and enthusiasm. （12）Whatever your ideal is, careful plan and preparation （13）is vital to its final realization. （2③）Of course, the path （14）from where you are to where you want to get is not always smooth and straight. Therefore, an optimistic, positive mind is （15）indispensable in the process of your pursuing your ideal.	（1）疑问句开头，新颖独特，引人注意。 （2）副词或副词短语开头，丰富了句式。 （3）意为“尤其，特别”。 （4）倒装句，否定词提前引起。 （5）“be of + *n.*”相当于“be + *adj.*”。 （6）意为“一方面，……。另一方面，……”，常用于表示列举。 （7）意为“一旦”。 （8）“疑问词 + 不定式”充当宾语。 （9）比喻使用恰当。 （10）倒装句，“only + 状语”提前引起。 （11）意为“能量的来源”。 （12）意为“无论什么”，引导让步状语从句。 （13）意为“对……至关重要”。 （14）from… to 连接的两个宾语从句的使用凸显语言功底。 （15）意为“不可或缺的”。

星期五　100 个闪光短语和 100 个闪光句式

一、100 个闪光短语

1. a/the combination of 合成，组合

   例： It is **the combination of** wit and political analysis that makes his articles so readable.

   他的风趣和政治分析相得益彰，这让他的文章脍炙人口。

2. a lifelong career/friendship/wish 一生的事业/友情/愿望

   例： For this type of person, the job is **a lifelong career**.

   对于这些人来说，工作就是一生的事业。

3. accordingly 于是，因此

   例： There aren't many jobs available. **Accordingly**, companies receive hundreds of resumes for every opening.

   公司目前的职位空缺不是很多，因此，每个空缺的职位都会收到成百上千份简历。

4. account for 占据

   例： In addition, the population in the countryside **accounts for** 80% of the population and the stability of the nation depends on them.

   另外，农村人口占据了总人口的 80%，而且国家的稳定也取决于这些人。

5. additionally 另外，此外

   例： **Additionally**, physical exercise is an effective way to release pressure.

   此外，体育锻炼是缓解压力的一种有效的方法。

6. address a problem/question/issue 着手解决问题

   例： It is high time we **addressed** the problem of campus waste.

   现在该是我们着手解决校园浪费问题的时候了。

7. alleviate the problem/situation/suffering 缓解问题/形势/苦难

   例： We can almost always do something to **alleviate** the present situation.

   我们几乎总是可以做些事情来缓解目前的形势。

8. along with 除……以外

   例： Tobacco is taxed in most countries, **along with** alcohol.

   除酒之外，烟草在多数国家也都要征税。

9. amazing sight 令人惊讶的景象

   例： It is an **amazing sight** to see many bicyclists on Chang'an Avenue in the morning head to work.

每天早上，在长安街上可以看到很多人骑着自行车去上班，这是一幅令人惊讶的景象。

10. apply to 适用

例：This saying **applies to** everyday life.

这个谚语适用于日常生活。

11. appropriate 适当的，合适的

例：This new education system is more **appropriate** to the needs of the students.

这种新的教育体系更符合学生的需求。

12. as is the case with 同样的情况

例：Parents are the main source of college funding, **as is the case with** most students.

父母是学生大学学费的主要来源，大多数学生都是这种情况。

13. as we know it 像我们知道的那样

例：If there were no electricity, our world would not be able to operate **as we know it**.

如果没有电，世界就不会是现在的样子了。

14. at any cost 无论如何，不惜任何代价

例：Because of the belief that lucky numbers can bring good luck, they will try to obtain lucky numbers for things such as a car license plate **at any cost**.

因为相信幸运数字能带来好运，他们会设法使用幸运数字，如在买车时会不惜一切代价买到有幸运数字的车牌。

15. at sb. 's disposal 任某人处理，供某人使用

例：The library has a large number of reference books **at the students' disposal**.

图书馆有大量的参考书可供同学们使用。

16. attribute sth. to sth. /sb. 把……归因于（或归功于某事/某人）

例：The fall in the number of deaths from heart disease **is** generally **attributed to** improvements in diet.

人们普通将心脏病死亡人数的下降归功于饮食方面的改善。

17. avenue 渠道，办法

例：We explored every possible **avenue**, but still couldn't come up with a solution.

我们寻找每一种可行的渠道，但仍然找不到解决的办法。

18. average person 普通人，一般人

例：Einstein's theory is really too difficult for the **average person** to understand.

爱因斯坦的理论对于普通人来说是很难理解的。

19. be informed of sth. 获悉，得知

例：People **are informed of** products and services by advertisements on TV.

人们通过电视广告了解到了各种产品和服务。

20. be tied to 被束缚着，被牵制着

例： Nowadays many people, especially young people do not like to **be tied to** a steady job.

现在许多人，尤其是年轻人，都不喜欢永远只做一种固定的工作。

21. belongings 所属物，随身物品

例： Please take care of your **belongings** during your travel here as there has been much theft reported.

请在此地游览期间保管好随身物品，据报道这里已经发生好几起盗窃事件了。

22. beyond 超出，越过

例： These expensive luxuries are far **beyond** the reach of ordinary people.

这些昂贵的奢侈品远远超出了普通人的负担能力。

23. broaden one's horizons 拓宽视野，开阔眼界

例： I'd like to work abroad to **broaden my horizons**.

我喜欢在国外工作，这样可以开拓我的眼界。

24. by/in contrast to/with 对比之下

例： **In contrast with** their system, ours seems very old-fashioned.

与他们的制度相比，我们的制度显得过于守旧。

25. call for 要求

例： Water shortage affects people's lives and has led to production shortages, all of which **call for** immediate action.

缺水影响了人们的生活和生产，因此需要立即采取行动来解决这个问题。

26. cater to 满足，迎合

例： There are magazines **catering to** different tastes and interests such as economics, sports, etc.

有各种杂志可以满足人们在经济、体育等不同方面的品味和兴趣。

27. common practice 司空见惯的事，惯例

例： It is **a common practice** in the US to tip the waiter.

在美国，给服务生小费是很普遍的现象。

28. compatible 和谐的，一致的

例： In my opinion, extensive and selective readings are **compatible** and can become a combination.

我认为广泛性阅读和选择性阅读不是相互排斥的，可以相互结合。

29. comply with 服从，顺从

例： All the drivers must **comply with** these safety rules.

所有司机都必须遵守这些安全规则。

30. conserve 节约，节省（电、水和能源等）

例： Everyone needs to make efforts to **conserve** water.

每个人都应该努力节约用水。

31. continuing education 继续教育

例： One of the problems with **continuing education** lies not in learning, but in unlearning.

继续教育的问题之一不在于学习而在于忘却。

32. cut down 削减，减少

例： We must **cut down** our expenses.

我们必须削减开支。

33. despite/in spite of 尽管

例： **Despite** its possible risks, on the whole, the advantages of trying new things outweigh its disadvantages.

尽管可能存在风险，但从整体上来说，尝试新鲜事物的利大于弊。

34. enable… to 使……能够

例： Blog **enables** millions of people **to** have a voice and connect with others.

博客使数百万人能够抒发自己的情感并和其他人联系起来。

35. encompass 包含，包括

例： The study **encompasses** the social, political, and economic aspects of the situation.

这项研究包括了社会、政治和经济几个方面的内容。

36. enrich 使丰富

例： Hobbies can **enrich** our lives greatly as long as we are able to manage our time.

只要合理安排时间，业余爱好就会大大丰富我们的生活。

37. exposure to 暴露，受到，经历

例： Prolonged **exposure to** the sun can cause skin cancer.

长期暴露在阳光下会导致皮肤癌。

38. fashion/fashionable 时尚/时尚的

例： As a result, sports are becoming popular and even **fashionable**.

因此，运动现在越来越流行，甚至成为一种时尚。

39. fast-paced 快节奏的

例： People today live a **fast-paced** life and are always in a hurry.

如今，人们的生活节奏很快，经常是匆匆忙忙的。

40. finance 供给……经费，负担经费

例： Nowadays many students take part-time jobs to **finance** their education.

现在许多学生做兼职工作来负担自己的学费。

41. focus on 集中精力，把重心放在……

例： Every student should **focus on** good study habits.

每个学生都应该集中精力培养好的学习习惯。

42. fund 提供资金

例： Previously in China, a university education was **funded** by the government.

以前，中国大学生的学费是由国家资助的。

43. have/gain access to/be accessible to 可以到达，可以使用

例： It is seen as an effective means of business communication where relevant staff **have access to** a computer network.

这被看做是一种有效的业务沟通方式，相关的员工都可以通过它使用同一个计算机网络。

44. have a hard time doing 感到为难

例： Many people still **have a hard time** saying "no".

很多人在说"不"的时候感到很为难。

45. hence 因此

例： The cost of transport is a major expense for an industry. **Hence** factory location is an important consideration.

运输成本对于一个产业来说是一项重大的支出，因此工厂选址十分重要。

46. highlight 突出，强调，重点

例： The report **highlighted** the problem of the old man.

该报告强调了老年人问题。

47. hold back 阻止，阻碍

例： Pollution has **held back** seriously the further development of mankind.

污染已经严重地阻碍了人类的进一步发展。

48. impress 使有印象，影响

例： Such research practices based on scientific principles **impressed** me.

这种在科学理论指导下的研究实践给我留下了很深的印象。

49. indeed 的确，其实

例： Dieting has its disadvantages. **Indeed**, it has great negative effects on one's health.

节食有其的弊端。事实上，它对一个人的健康有很大的负面影响。

50. in all walks of life 各个行业，生活的各个方面

例： This is indeed an important question **in all walks of life** and in any country.

这的确是一个各行各业以及任何一个国家都存在的重要问题。

51. in faith 的确

例： He doesn't know the answer **in faith**.

他确实不知道答案。

52. in favor of 支持，赞同

例：Most people are **in favor of** this practice.

大多人赞同这种做法。

53. in general/generally 一般来说

例：Young people **in general** seem more prone to job-hop.

年轻人一般更容易跳槽。

54. in honor of 纪念，庆祝

例：**In honor of** the upcoming Teachers' Day, we plan a party for our teachers.

为庆祝即将到来的教师节，我们为老师们准备了一场晚会。

55. in the light of 依据，按照

例：Many old people tend to review a new thing **in the light of** past experience.

许多老人往往会依据过去的经验来评判一件新的事物。

56. in the long run 从长远来看

例：**In the long run**, this plan is not in accordance with our final goal.

从长远来看，这个计划与我们的最终目标不符。

57. in vain 徒劳，白费工夫

例：All our hard work turned out to be **in vain**.

我们所有的努力都白费了。

58. involve in 卷入……中

例：No one would like to **involve in** this matter.

没有人愿意牵扯到这件事中。

59. link 联系

例：However, there has been no medical research directly **linking** smoking to the lung cancer.

然而，没有医学研究证明吸烟会直接导致肺癌。

60. live through 度过，经受住

例：Those that **lived through** the earthquake will cherish today's happy life more.

经历过地震的那些人将更加珍惜今天的幸福生活。

61. make up for 弥补

例：Elective courses can greatly **make up for** the inadequacy of compulsory courses.

选修课能够极大地弥补必修课的不足。

62. meanwhile 同时

例：The incomes of male professionals went up by almost 80%. **Meanwhile**, part-time women workers saw their earnings fall.

男性专业人员的收入几乎上涨了将近80%，与此同时，兼职女性职工的收入却下降了。

63. mistrust 不信任

例： The effect is a general **mistrust** among consumers toward sellers and the free market in general.

这样做一般会导致消费者不信任销售商和自由市场。

64. more often than not 时常，往往

例： In fact, **more often than not**, customers were more interested in the software than the hardware.

事实上，消费者往往对软件比对硬件更感兴趣。

65. mutual 相互的

例： Differences foster **mutual** complementation and **mutual** support.

差异会促进相互之间的理解和支持。

66. (There is) no doubt 毫无疑问

例： There is **no doubt** that TV has greatly influenced our lives and the way we live.

毫无疑问，电视已经极大地影响了我们的生活和生活方式。

67. occasion 情况，场合，时机

例： As a general rule, people like to help each other, but there are **occasions** when you shouldn't hesitate to say "no".

一般来讲，人与人是应该互相帮助的。但在有些情况下，你还是应该毫不犹豫地说"不"。

68. on account of 由于

例： We delayed our departure **on account of** the bad weather.

糟糕的天气耽搁了我们出发。

69. on behalf of 代表，为了

例： **On behalf of** my colleagues and myself I thank you.

我代表我的同事和我本人向你表示感谢。

70. on no account 绝不

例： **On no account** should we follow blindly.

我们绝不应当盲从。

71. on second thought 进一步考虑

例： You should make decisions **on second thoughts**.

你应该进一步考虑后再作决定。

72. on the whole 总体来说

例： **On the whole**, young men agrees study most, least conservative thought.

总的来说，年轻人最爱学习，思想激进。

73. on the contrary 相反

例： I've never opposed it; **on the contrary**, I've always supported it.

我从未反对它，相反，我一直支持它。

74. out of reach 够不着的，负担不起的

例：Those who are not fond of traveling consider it costly and **out of reach** for the average person.
那些不喜欢旅游的人认为旅游费用高，一般人负担不起。

75. outweigh 超过，胜过，优于
例：The advantages far **outweigh** the disadvantages in this case.
在这件事上，利远大于弊。

76. overwhelm/overwhelming 淹没，压倒/势不可挡的，压倒性的
例：There is **overwhelming** evidence that smoking damages your health.
有大量的证据显示，吸烟有害健康。

77. particulars 细节
例：For further **particulars**, contact the office.
详情请联系办事处。

78. pastime 消遣，娱乐
例：Reading novels is a favorite **pastime** because of the vivid descriptions and plots.
读小说是打发时光的好办法，因为小说里有生动的描写和故事情节。

79. perform/performance 表现
例：Good study habits are essential if one wants to **perform** well.
要想学习好就要养成良好的学习习惯。

80. prevalence 流行
例：The **prevalence** of fake commodities is a problem in our society.
假货充斥市场已经成为社会的一个问题。

81. prevail 流行，盛行
例：Good will **prevail** over evil.
善良将战胜邪恶。

82. pros and cons 正反两方面
例：Weighing up the **pros and cons**, I am inclined to the latter opinion.
权衡利弊，我倾向于后一种观点。

83. prospect 前途，前景
例：Nowadays job **prospects** for college students don't look good.
现在大学毕业生的就业前景不好。

84. provided 假设
例：Some believe it is a waste of time to sit for the CET-6 because they have already passed the CET-4, which entitles them to graduate with a degree **provided** other requirements are met.
有些学生认为考英语六级是浪费时间，因为如果其他考试都合格了，只要通过了英语四级，学校就会允许他们毕业并授予学位。

85. raise the money (raise money) 筹款
例：There are several possible ways to **raise the money** to pay for fees and

tuition.
有很多种方式可以筹款交学杂费。

86. rather than 而不是，不愿
例：It is one's ability **rather than** the luck that plays a crucial role in his success.
在一个人成功中起决定性作用的是一个人的能力而不是运气。

87. regardless of 不管，不顾
例：Some students buy whatever they like **regardless of** the price.
一些学生想买什么就买什么，根本不考虑价格。

88. remain 保持，仍旧是
例：However, living standards and health conditions of people in developing countries **remain** unsatisfactory.
然而，发展中国家人民的生活水平和健康状况仍然不能让人满意。

89. stand out 突出，显眼
例：Her work **stands out** from the rest as easily the best.
她的工作成绩远比其他人的好。

90. set forth 宣布，提出
例：He **set forth** their aim in a speech.
他在一次演说中提出了他们的目标。

91. set out to 准备
例：Many graduating students **set out to** change the society around them, but ended up being changed by it.
许多学生在即将走出校门时都试图改变社会，但最终却被社会改变了。

92. strain 加大难度，增加困难
例：Industrial development requires a large amount of water, which further **strains** this precious resource.
工业的发展需要大量的水，这就进一步加重了缺水现象。

93. the reason behind 真正的原因，背后的原因，潜在的原因
例：This is **the reason behind** the recent rise in prices.
这就是最近物价上涨的真正原因。

94. the reverse 反过来
例：**The reverse** is actually the case.
事实刚好相反。

95. illustrate 说明
例：Here's another example to **illustrate** my point.
另一个例子可以说明我的观点。

96. to summarize（in summary）总之
例：**To summarize**, personal preference determines if one lives in city or countryside.
总之，个人喜好决定了人们住在城市还是乡村。

97. undermine 破坏，危害

例：Constant criticism will **undermine** one's confidence.

经常被批评会摧毁一个人的自信。

98. vary from 不同

例：Hobbies **vary from** person to person based on educational backgrounds, income levels and interests.

由于教育背景、收入水平和兴趣的不同，人们的爱好也因人而异。

99. well-rounded 全面的，多才多艺的

例：We encourage the kids to be **well-rounded**.

我们鼓励孩子全面发展。

100. widen/enrich one's knowledge 扩大知识面

例：Travel allows people to learn about different cultures and **widen their knowledge**.

旅游可以让人们了解不同的文化，扩大知识面。

二、100 个闪光句式

1. As can be indicated/is revealed/is showed in the table/graph/chart, /According to the figures given in the table, /As the survey results show, /This chart shows that / It can be seen from the statistics that…

   正如图表中显示的/根据表格中给出的数据/正如调查结果显示/如图所示/从数据中我们可以看出，……

2. From… to…, there is a slight/slow/steady/rapid/dramatic/abrupt rise/increase in…

   从……到……，在……方面有了轻微/缓慢/稳定/快速/显著/急剧的增长/增加。

3. During… /… later, the demand/income/price/production of… has declined / decreased /fallen /dropped rapidly/abruptly/markedly/sharply (from… to…)

   在……期间/……时间以后，……的需求/收入/价格/产量已经（从……）急剧地下降（到……）。

4. The figure has nearly doubled/tripled, as against that of last year.

   这个数字几乎上涨到去年的两倍/三倍。

5. The number is… times as much as that of…

   数量是……的……倍。

6. By comparison with…, it increased/decreased/fell from… to…
   与……相比，它从……增加/下降到……
7. According to the figures given in the table, the number of… has risen/declined dramatically in the past few years.
   正如图表所示，近年来……的数量有了显著的增加/下降。
8. From the chart we can see clearly that the number of… has increased/decreased from… to…, and then to…
   从图中我们可以清楚地看到，……的数量已经从……上升/下降到……，之后又（上升/下降）到……
9. An increasing number of… would rather… than…
   越来越多的……宁愿……而不愿……
10. During the period between… and…, the percentage/number of… declined from… to…, while the percentage/number of… rose from… to…
    在……期间，……的百分比/数量从……下降到……，而……的百分比/数量却从……上升到……
11. This table provides several important points of comparison between…
    表格中显示了几个重要的对比点：……
12. There are some/two/many good reasons for… /to do…
    有一些/两点/许多理由……
13. One of the main reasons for… is (that) …
    ……的一个主要原因是……
14. Among all these reasons/factors/causes, … plays an important role.
    在所有的原因中，……起着很关键的作用/是主要的一个。
15. One may think of the trend as a result of…
    人们可能会认为该趋势是由于……
16. The change in… largely results from the fact that…
    ……方面的变化，这在很大程度是因为……
17. There are several causes for this significant growth in… First…
    有一些原因导致了在……方面的显著增长。第一，……
18. A number of factors contribute to this change.
    许多因素导致这一变化。
19. … is an important/vital factor/reason for… /plays an important/vital role in…
    ……是导致……的一个重要原因/在……方面起到至关重要的作用。
20. An increase/decrease in… results in/leads to/produces…
    在……方面的增加/减少导致了……
21. The reasons for this phenomenon may be obvious. /There may be some obvious reasons for this phenomenon.

可能有几点很明显的原因导致该现象。

22. … is mainly due to the following reasons/factors.
……主要是由于以下原因/因素。

23. There are many factors deciding/influencing…
有许多因素决定/影响……

24. Effective measures should be taken as soon as possible to…
应该尽快采取有效的措施来……

25. It is an urgent thing to take effective methods to solve this problem.
当务之急是采取有效的方法解决这一问题。

26. Facing…, we should try our best to figure out the ways to change this situation.
面对……，我们应该努力想办法改变这种局面。

27. The following ways can be taken to…
可以采用下列方法来……

28. … is an effective way to…
……是一个……的有效方法。

29. By doing…, one person can…
通过……，一个人可以……

30. In order to…, … should…
为了……，……应该……

31. Taking the above-mentioned into consideration/Considering the serious effects of the problem, I think it is high time that we took effective measures/for us to take effective measures to…
鉴于以上所述/考虑到问题的严重性，我认为是采取有效的措施（做）……的时候了。

32. We must look for all immediate methods, because the present situation of…, if permitted to continue, will sure lead to/result in…
我们必须立刻寻找解决办法，因为现在的……形势如果持续下去的话，势必会导致……

33. There is no immediate solution to the problem of…, but… might be helpful/beneficial.
……问题并没有立竿见影的解决办法，但是……可能会有所帮助。

34. No easy method can be at hand to solve the problem of…, but the general awareness of the necessity/importance of… might be the first step on the right way.
目前还没有任何简单的办法能够解决……问题，但是，使人们普遍认识到……的必要性/重要性或许是有效的第一步。

35. To reverse the trend is not a light task, and it requires keen consciousness of…

要扭转这一趋势并不容易，它需要对……具有敏锐意识。

36. Different people have / hold different opinions / views on the question / problem / matter. Some believe that… ; others argue that… ; (still others maintain that…)
对于这一问题，人们的看法各不相同。一些人认为……；其他人认为……(；还有一些人坚持……)。

37. Some people hold the opinion that…, while others argue that…
一些人认为……，然而其他人争辩说……

38. When it comes to…, different people offer different views.
当谈到/涉及……时，不同的人有不同的看法。

39. As to…, there is no consensus/complete agreement among people.
关于……，人们的看法不一。

40. They think quite differently on this question.
他们对这一问题的看法完全不同。

41. Opinions vary from individual to individual, from culture to culture.
不同的人，不同的文化，对这一问题的看法都不相同。

42. However, still some other people/others think differently/do not agree this/hold the opposite opinion.
然而，还有一些人持不同的观点。

43. Faced with…, quite a few people argue that…, but other people conceive differently.
面对……，相当一部分认为……，但是其他人并不认同。

44. Now it is commonly held that…, but I doubt whether…
现在人们普遍认为……，但是我怀疑……是否……

45. A is to B what/ as C is to D.
A 之于 B，就像 C 之于 D。

46. In contrast (to) … /On the contrary…
与之形成对比的是/相反，……

47. Just as…, so…
正如……，……也一样。

48. A and B have… in common/have many common…
A 和 B 有共同的……

49. The same is true of… /The same can be said of…
同样的情况也适用于……

50. Although it may bring unfavorable consequences, we can be sure to conclude that this practice is favorable on the whole.
尽管这可能会带来不利的结果，但是我们可以确定这种做法从整体上来说是有利的。

51. The advantages of A are much greater than those of B.
A 的好处明显大于 B 的。
52. Compared with B, A has many advantages.
和 B 相比，A 有许多优点/能带来许多好处。
53. The advantages outweigh the disadvantages.
利大于弊。
54. Although A enjoys considerable advantage over…, it cannot compete with B in…
尽管 A 在……方面有相当大的优势，但它在……方面不能和 B 相比。
55. Contrary to widely accepted views, I believe that…
与普遍接受的观点相反，我认为……
56. It is one thing to…, it is quite another to…
……是一回事，但……就是另外一回事了。
57. … have drawbacks as well as merits.
……既有缺点也有优点。
58. A is superior/inferior to B (in…)
A（在……方面）优于/劣于 B。
59. A is just the opposite of B.
A 恰恰与 B 相反。
60. A differs from B in that…
A 不同于 B 的是……
61. A is not the same as B.
A 不同于 B。
62. There is a general discussion today about the issue of… /Currently there is a widespread concern on…
现在对于……存在广泛的讨论/关注。
63. Now people in growing number are coming to realize/More and more people are realizing /have come to realize…
现在越来越多的人逐渐/已经开始意识到……
64. Recently/In recent years, the phenomenon/issue/problem of… has been brought into focus/ aroused public attention/become a heated topic/ been in the limelight.
近年来，……现象/问题成为公众关注的焦点。
65. With (the steady/rapid/amazing development of) …, people begin to…/there arises a heated debate as to…
随着……（的稳定/快速/惊人的发展），人们开始……。/出现了对……的热烈讨论。
66. Nowadays, our society is witnessing more and more…

目前，社会上有越来越多的……

67. In the past/last/recent… years, there has been a sharp increase/decrease in… /… has experienced an alarming rise/decline (in…). According to an official report/survey/poll…
在过去的……年中，在……方面有了急剧的增长/下降。根据一项官方报告/调查/民意测验，……

68. Until recently/For years, … has/have been regarded/viewed as… But some people are taking a fresh look at it.
直到最近/许多年来，……一直被认为是……。但是现在一些人对它有了新的认识。

69. Most people used to… /In the past, … But many people don't share this view any more now.
大多数人过去……/过去……，但是现在许多人不再这样认为。

70. It is a tradition/common practice/traditional way (to…). But now/in recent decades things have changed.
……是一个传统/惯例/传统的方式。但是现在/近几十年来，情况已经发生了变化。

71. Nowadays there is no agreement among people as to… Some people… while others may…
现在对于……人们（的看法或做法）并不一致。一些人……，然而其他人可能……

72. When asked…, a great majority of people/most people… But I think quite differently.
当被问及……时，大多数人会……。但是我有不同的看法。

73. When it comes to… /When faced with/In the face of…, quite a few people claim that…, while other people argue…
当谈到/面对……时，相当一部分人认为……，然而也有一些人认为……

74. Now, it is commonly/generally/widely believed/acknowledged/accepted that…
现在，人们普遍认为/承认/接受……

75. Now there is a growing awareness/recognition of the necessity to… /Now people are becoming increasingly aware/conscious of the importance of…
现在人们越来越意识到……的必要性/重要性。

76. …, which has been generally accepted. The truth of it is deep and profound/self-evident.
……一直被人们普遍接受。其中的道理是深远的/明显的。

77. Should/What…? Opinions on/Attitudes towards/Answers to the question vary from person to person.

……？对于这个问题的看法/态度/回答因人而异。

78. “Why do/ have…?” Many people often ask/pose the question like this.
“为什么……?”许多人经常问/提出这样的问题。

79. There is an old/popular saying/proverb which goes that… The truth of it is profound and significant. / Under its simplified cover, a truth is ironically pointed out, that is, …
有一句古老/流行的谚语说：“……”。其中的道理意义深远。/简单的话语中蕴含着具有讽刺意味的事实，那就是……

80. One great… had ever said/once remarked, “…” Now it still has a realistic/profound significance. / It is still working in our modern society. / The remark is still confirmed by people in today’s society.
一位伟大的……曾经说过：“……”现在这句话仍然具有现实/深远的意义。/在现代社会这个道理仍然适用。/在今天的社会中仍然有许多人相信这一点。

81. From the above-mentioned /what has been discussed above, /Judging from all evidence offered, we may safely arrive at/draw/come to/reach the conclusion that…
综上所述，我们可以合理地得出结论：……

82. Taking into account/Considering all these factors /In view of the above-mentioned facts, we should…
考虑到这些因素/鉴于以上事实，我们应该……

83. It is no doubt/denying that/ There is little/no doubt/denying that (considerable attention must be paid to) …
毫无疑问，(我们必须多加关注) ……

84. It is, therefore, obvious/evident that… require immediate attention.
因此，很显然……需要立刻引起注意。

85. It is high time/It is an urgent thing that we put considerable/great/special emphasis on…
当务之急是重点关注……

86. In a word, it takes our common efforts/is everyone’s responsibility to…
总之，……需要我们共同的努力/是我们每一个人的责任。

87. Only in this way/through these ways/when all measures go into action can the problem of… be solved in near future… /can we…
只有这样/所有的措施付诸行动的时候，问题才能够在不久的将来得以解决。/我们才能……

88. Therefore, think it over and make full preparation before you decide to… /we should take a full account before we make our decisions.

因此，在决定……之前要考虑周全并做好充分的准备/我们应该仔细考虑之后再作决定。

89. Given the factors that I have just outlined, it is wise to support the statement that…
鉴于我刚才提到的因素，支持……观点是明智的。

90. All the available/striking evidence goes to show that… /points to the fact that…
一切现有的/有力的证据表明，……

91. All the evidence/analysis supports/confirms an unmistakable/unshakable conclusion /a sound view that…
所有证据/分析都证实了一个不可动摇的结论/合理的观点：

92. The conclusion is self-evident. …
结论不言而喻。……

93. Weighing up these two arguments/Taking into account all these factors, I am for… /I prefer…
权衡这两种观点/考虑到这些因素，我支持/宁愿……

94. Weighing the pros and cons of…, we can naturally arrive at the conclusion that…
权衡……的利弊，我们可以自然地得出这样的结论：……

95. Clearly/Obviously/No doubt, if we cannot… / if we ignore/are blind to…, it is very likely that…
显然，如果我们不能/如果我们忽视……，很可能……

96. Any person/nation/society who/which ignores/is blind to/fails to… would pay a heavy price.
任何忽视/没能……的人/民族/社会，都将付出沉重的代价。

97. If we work on… from now on, in foreseeable future, we will not be cursed/overwhelmed by the same dilemma/problem.
如果我们从现在开始努力……，那么在不久的将来，我们将不会再为相同的难题所困扰。

98. If we can solve the problem with no efforts spared, human beings will not be caught/stuck in the same conditions.
如果我们能够不遗余力地解决这一问题，人类将不会再陷入相同的困境。

99. Following these methods may not guarantee the success in…, but the pay-off will be worth the sweat we shed.
这些办法或许无法保证成功地……，但这种努力是值得的。

100. It is essential/necessary/important/imperative that effective/quick/proper measures/ actions/ steps should be taken to…
采取有效/快速/适当的方法/行动/措施来……是必要的。

三、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Internet and privacy**. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 网络几乎已经渗透到方方面面，包括个人隐私。
2. 网络会对个人隐私产生哪些影响？
3. 应该如何保障网络上的个人隐私？

范文	点评
Internet has (1) penetrated into all the aspects of our life and work. (2①) We can study and work by it; we can find a job by it; (2②) we can communicate by it; (2③) we can entertain by it; (2④) we can buy and sell by it. We can do almost everything on the Internet, (3) almost anywhere anytime. (4) However, while providing services for us, Internet is (5) inevitably invading our privacy (6) to some degree. The services on most websites require our registration. If we want to enjoy these services, we have to provide much private information, (7) including our name, gender, address, telephone number and sometimes bank account number. (8) Due to (9) the poor administration and weak security, our information might be open, stolen or sold on the Internet. (10) Even sometimes the information will be (11) misused by the criminals. (12) Considering the above-mentioned, we must (13) enhance the alertness (14) when using the Internet. First, when we need Internet service, we should try to log on those big legal websites. Second, if the service requires important private information, you should (15) think twice before you type it in.	(1) 意为“渗透进”。 (2) 排比句，结构相同，增强气势。 (3) 注意两个副词的使用。 (4) 意为“然而，与此同时”，转折引出网络的弊端。 (5) 意为“不可避免地”。 (6) 意为“在某种程度上”，限定词的使用使表达更加严谨。 (7) 现在分词短语充当后置定语。 (8) 意为“由于，因为”。 (9) 学会使用抽象名词。 (10) 表示递进，条理清晰。 (11) 意为“滥用”。 (12) 意为“鉴于以上论述”。 (13) 意为“提高警惕性”。 (14) 现在分词短语，使表达更加简洁。 (15) 意为“三思而后行”。

星期六　一周复习效果检验

Test 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay explaining **why many people like to buy lotteries.** You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay discussing **The Impact of E – mails on Impersonal Communication.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief description of the picture and then discuss **how to solve the conflict between parental hopes and personal ideals.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 4

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Post-holiday Syndrome among Students.** You should start your essay with a brief description of the picture and then discuss how todeal with post-holidaysyndrome. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay explaining **why it is necessary to try new things.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay explaining **why it is unwise to think traditional virtues are out of date.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 7

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether China should loosen its one-child policy.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

Test 8

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Confront a Disaster.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

参考范文

Test 1

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述当前社会上人们热衷于购买彩票的现象；第二段说明导致人们购买彩票的原因；第三段针对购买彩票提出几点“我”的建议。

Why Do People Like to Buy Lotteries?

Nowadays, there exist all kinds of lotteries in our society, such as welfare lottery, sports lottery, computer lottery, and so forth. Anyone, whether men or women, the old or the young, may buy lottery tickets. But why do quite a few people like buying them?

The following reasons can account for the popularity of lotteries. First of all, most people are trying their luck on lottery tickets. They have a long-cherished dream of making big money over night. In addition, there are some people who want to make donation to public welfare by buying lottery tickets. Besides, some people buy them just for fun.

As far as I am concerned, there are some risks in buying lotteries. People should never count on making big money by buying lotteries. Furthermore, lotteries to some extent are similar to gambling, so people should not spend too much money on them. In a word, people should keep a clear head when buying lotteries.

Test 2

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段由电子邮件的流行引出其对人际关系的影响；第二段对比阐述电子邮件对人际关系正反两方面的影响；第三段总结“我”的看法。

The Impact of E-mails on Impersonal Communication

Nowadays more and more people are using e-mails to exchange information instead of traditional way of mailing letters. The popularity of e-mails produces great impact on impersonal communication.

It is no doubt that E-mails provides great convenience for exchanging information, especially in the work. E-mails make communication quicker and easier than before. Moreover, by e-mail we can deliver more information including pictures and sounds in a more vivid way. However, e-mails has some disadvantages. With the same format and the print font, e-mails includes less emotion than traditional letters written by hand. Most of people use e-mails to deliver just information without feelings.

From my point of view, e-mails do bring great convenience for us, but it is not such a good way to express our feeling as traditional letters. In my eyes, handwriting and letter paper can deliver many feelings. Therefore, you might as well write a letter by hand when you want to express your love and care.

Test 3

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述父母的期望和孩子的理想之间的矛盾；第二段说明产生这种矛盾的主要原因；第三段说明解决这一矛盾的办法。

How to Solve the Conflict between Parental Hopes and Personal Ideals

From the picture, we see a scene of filling in the application for college, where a child is struggling for the pen with his father. Obviously, the child wants to fill in the application as he wishes. The picture show vividly the conflict between parents' hopes and children's personal ideals.

But what has led to the conflict? First of all, in this fast-changing society, parents and children have too many differences in mind. Secondly, traditional patriarchy is still influencing Chinese parents. They are used to making decisions for their children. Third, nowadays young people have strong independence, who want to plan their own future.

In order to solve the conflict, both parents and children should pay their efforts. For one thing, parents should give their children rights to make their own decisions. They may help their children make choices instead of replacing them to make choices. For another, children should learn to respect their parents' advices. As long as both parents and children learn to think from the other side's point of view, the conflicts between them can be avoided.

Test 4

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述学生的假期综合征现象；第二段说明导致这一现象的原因；第三段针对如何解决假期综合征提出你的建议。

Post-holiday Syndrome among Students

From the picture, we can see a student feels very depressed about returning to campus life after a holiday of playing games, sleeping late and surfing the Internet. The picture mirrors vividly a kind of phenomenon among students called post-holiday syndrome.

The appearance of post-holiday syndrome can largely be attributed to unhealthy lifestyles during the holiday. Many students overindulge in eating and playing during the holiday. They don't follow the routine schedule at school, many of whom stay up late and get up late. Even some students are addicted to computer games all day and night. So they feel many discomforts when the new term begins.

I have some suggestions on how to deal with this syndrome. First, try to choose more healthy and meaningful ways of relaxing during holidays, such as doing some exercises and reading novels. Besides, it might be an effective way to return to the campus or the school routine schedule a few days earlier before the new semester starts. You will have time to adjust your lifestyle to campus life.

Test 5

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇论证观点类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段提出论点“有时候我们需要尝试新鲜事物”；第二段阐述尝试新鲜事物的好处，论证观点的正确性；第三段重申尝试新鲜事物的必要性，总结全文。

Advantages of Trying New Things

It is widely accepted that one is more likely to succeed at things he already knows how to do well. However, to limit ourselves to doing only those things will make us miss many opportunities to develop other interests and skills. Therefore, sometimes it is necessary for us to try some new things.

Despite the risk of failure in trying new things, we can benefit from it. Firstly, the process is a rewarding experience, from which we may feel a different world. Secondly, even if we fail, we can still absorb experience and lessons; if it turns out that we succeed, we'll get great pleasure and confidence. Finally, it is impossible for us to never fail even if we do only what we are familiar with. With experience of trying new things, we can deal with the unexpected situations better.

Considering the above-mentioned, we needn't be afraid of trying new things. But it is worth noting that trying new things bravely does not mean acting rashly and blindly. We should take full account before our trying new things.

Test 6

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述人们传统价值观的变化，引出一些人认为传统美德已经过时的错误看法并说明理由；第二段表明“我”认为传统美德没有过时，并说明理由；第三段再次强调传统美德的重要意义。

Are Traditional Virtues Out of Date?

With the development of our society, people's traditional values have changed a lot. Many people are inclined to seek after high-quality life and high economic profits. Under the influence of these changes, some people come to the conclusion

that traditional virtues, like thrift and honesty, are out of date, to which I could give my consent.

Though some of traditional virtues are meeting greater challenge than before, most people, as the mainstream of our society, still go after these time-honored traditional virtues. In their eyes, high quality life doesn't mean waste. Whether in the past, at present or in the future, thrift is everyone's responsibility. In addition, without honesty, our society and economy will fall into disorder; without mutual help, human society will stop developing soon.

Considering the above-mentioned, I think, traditional virtues remain indispensable elements in the Chinese character in modern society. Therefore, we must strengthen education on traditional virtues. It is only if the whole nation is aware of their eternal value that traditional virtues are likely to take root firmly in our nation's spirits.

Test 7

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出目前对我国放宽独生子女政策存在的争议；第二段为对比论证争议双方各自的理由；第三段表明“我”对这一问题的看法，并说明理由。

Should China Loosen Its One-child Policy?

Nowadays, whether China should loosen its one-child policy has aroused a heated debate. Some people are in favor of the new policy that if both of the couple are the only child in the family, they can give birth to a second child. However, others take an opposite view.

People who take the former opinion point out that the problems of aging population and the decline of working force will become more serious if China stick to the one-child policy. They argue that loosening the one-child policy can help promote rational growth of population. Yet, people who are for the latter opinion firmly believe that the huge population of china will cause the shortage of natural resources and the excessive population.

In my opinion, it is advisable for China to loosen its one-child policy, because it makes the policy more humane. All in all, the government should handle this problem flexibly.

Test 8

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述目前自然灾害发生的现状和主要危害；第二段说明导致自然灾害增多的原因；第三段说明应该如何预防和应对自然灾害。

How to Confront a Disaster

Natural disasters, like earthquake, tsunami and hurricane, often come unexpectedly. In recent years, there have happened frequently some natural disasters in the world, like China earthquake, the Indonesian tsunami. These disasters killed millions of people, destroyed countless homes and fertile land.

But what on earth leads to these natural disasters? Of course, natural variation plays a very important role. However, more and more people become aware that those disasters have much to do with what we have done to the earth. We have cut down too many trees. We have badly polluted the environment. As a result, nature goes up to revenge itself on us.

Considering the great destruction of natural disasters, it is urgent for us to do our best to protect our environment so as to prevent the natural disasters. Besides, when natural disasters really happen, firstly, we must keep a clear head and try to save ourselves and help others; secondly, we must unite together and have a firm belief to get through disasters. Only in this way can we conquer disasters.

第六周

预测作文热点，进行实战演练

一、热点演练 30 篇

本周给出最新热点预测 30 篇，一方面进一步熟悉前面所讲的内容，另一方面对最新命题热点有一个全面把握，最终，实现在考场之上游刃有余。

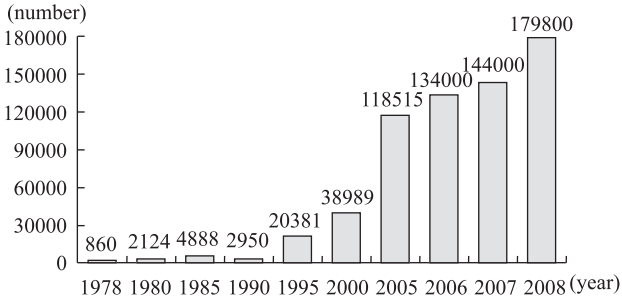
热点演练 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **online games addiction** and then **explain what you think of online games.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Teenagers' Studying Abroad** based on the statistics provided in the chart below. Please give a brief description of the chart first and then make comments on it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

The number of teenagers studying abroad



热点演练 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **the prevalence of fake news reports** and then **explain why there are so many fake news reports and how to prevent them.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 4

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with **a brief account of the phenomenon of many young people being addicted to killing time indoors** and then **explain why they like to kill time indoors and the consequences of staying indoors for too long time.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief account of **the phenomenon of high expenditure of college students** and then **explain what leads to this phenomenon**. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay based on the cartoon below. You should start your essay with **a brief account of the increasing use of smartphones** and then **explain the consequences of overusing them**. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 7

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **The Popularity of BBS**. Give your brief description of BBS and then make comments on it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 8

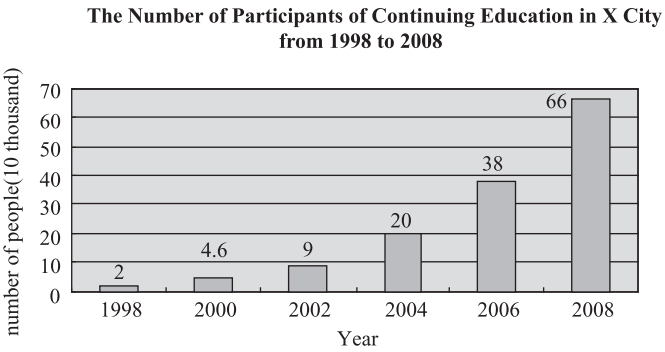
Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Cyber Crimes**. Give your brief description of the problem of Cyber crimes and then make comments on how to deal with it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 9

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Success and Luck** by commenting on famous proverb "Man Proposes, God Disposes". You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 10

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **A Boom in Continuing Education** based on the statistics provided in the graph below. Please give a brief description of the graph first and then make comments on it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

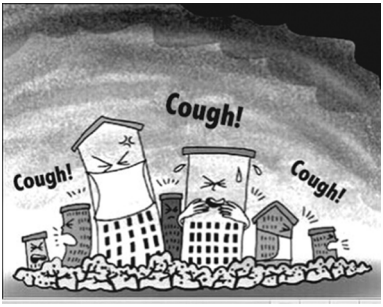


热点演练 11

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Goal Setting Is Important** by commenting on John Ruskin's famous remark, "Living without an aim is like sailing without a compass." You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 12

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief description of the picture and then discuss **How to make our air cleaner.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.



热点演练 13

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether universities should lower admission requirements for celebrities.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 14

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **Craze in famous brands on campus.** You should explain what has led to this phenomenon and make comments on it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 15

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay about **a teacher of yours who has influenced you most.** You should state the reasons and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 16

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether traditional newspapers will be replaced by electronic newspapers.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 17

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Don't Neglect the Elder Generation.** You should start your essay with a brief description of the picture and then make comments on it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 18

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay explaining **how to build a harmonious dormitory life.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 19

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay explaining **why it is good for college graduates to start at the bottom.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 20

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **work-study programs for college students.** You should explain main purposes of students' taking part in the programs and make comments on this phenomenon. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 21

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the popularity ofworking at home.** You should explain its advantages and disadvantages and then give your opinions. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 22

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether a university professor should focus on scientific research.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 23

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the advantages of social practice for college students.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 24

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay explaining **why it is necessary to strength sex education on college students.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 25

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether a white lie is acceptable.** You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 26

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the craze for the test for national civil servants.** You should explain main reasons for the craze and then make comments on it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 27

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief description of the picture and then discuss **the impact of electronic products on young parents.** You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 28

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the phenomenon of reserving a seat on campus.** You should explain the possible effects of this phenomenon and make comments on it. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 29

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **light projects in cities.** You should explain their advantages and disadvantages and then make comments on them. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

热点演练 30

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Should We Use a Machine to Make Him Breathe**? Give your opinions and reasons. You should write at least 120 words but no more than 180 words.

二、热点演练参考范文

热点演练 1

框架搭建：由图画和提示内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画指出父母对待网络游戏的否定态度并简单说明理由；第二段指出一些人对待网络游戏的肯定态度并简单说明理由；第三段阐述“我”对网络游戏的看法并说明理由。

Online Games

The picture vividly reveals the parents' worrying about the fact that their children are addicted to online games. Parents tend to think online games do nothing but be harmful to the students. In their opinions, as long as a student begins to play online games, his academic performance must become worse. Besides, they say that sitting before the computer screen for a long time will bring negative effects on the health of young people.

However, there are many others who argue that online games are not always harmful. They can train the ability of youngsters to respond to things quickly. Moreover, they can stimulate their imagination and interest in computer science. More importantly, it does bring young students much pleasure.

From my point of view, it depends on how we use it whether an online game is harmful or beneficial. It will be a wonderful entertainment if we play it in a clever way. We young people should have enough self-control ability. Besides, parents and teachers should give students necessary instructions on how to take advantage of online games.

热点演练 2

框架搭建：由标题和图表内容可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出人们对青少年出国留学现象的不同看法，继而表明“我”的态度；第二段先指出青少年出国留学有一定好处，然后转折表明“我”的相反观点；第三段陈述理由论证“我”的观点的正确性。

Teenagers' Studying Abroad

From the above chart, we can see clearly that there is a rapid increase in the number of teenagers studying abroad from 2000 to 2008. Some people think it will certainly do good to the children, while others insist it may not be a good choice.

As for me, I prefer to the latter opinion.

Of course, some children might benefit from studying abroad. For example, the independent life might make them learn confidence and perseverance. But it doesn't mean that it is a right thing to send a teenager to study abroad. From my point of view, it has a great risk to do this.

The following reasons can support my argument. First, the quality of overseas education is not necessary higher than that of our education. Indeed, some foreign schools aim at earning money. Second, early independent life may be harmful to the child, if he cannot receive proper guidance and tender care from both teachers and parents. To conclude, I think it is necessary for young students to make a careful consideration before going abroad.

热点演练 3

框架搭建：由图画和提示内容可知，本文应为一篇问题分析类作文，其基本段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述目前社会上虚假新闻盛行的问题；第二段分析导致虚假新闻盛行的主要原因；第三段针对如何减少虚假新闻谈谈“我”的看法和建议。

Fake News Reports

It's not uncommon that some journalists or troublemakers make up fake or misleading stories about celebrities, illnesses, crimes, etc. Just as we see in the picture, the man is faking up a news report about the death of the famous businessman Bill Gates. It is not difficult to imagine how bad influence it will bring when the news is spread via the Internet.

Many people might ask what has led to the prevalence of fake stories in modern society? More often than not, some journalists create misleading news in order to draw public attention so as to make themselves more popular or to win certain prizes. In addition, some people who are anxious to see the world in disorder want to fool the public and revenge the society by making up fake news. Besides, the development of the Internet propels the spreading of fake news.

Now, it's high time for China's journalism supervisory bodies to take measures to prevent all possible fake news. For instance, those who are found to manipulate news should be severely punished and those journalists could be banned from news writing.

热点演练 4

框架搭建：由图画和提示内容可知，本文应为一篇现象解释类作文，其基本段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述目前年轻人喜欢“宅”在家里的现象；第二段解释为什么年轻人喜欢“宅”在家里；第三段阐述长时间“宅”在家里的不良后果并给出“我”的建议。

Killing Time Indoors

Nowadays a growing number of people, especially the 20s or 30s like the young man in the picture, are addicted to killing their spare time indoors. They spend lots of time online chatting, blogging, shopping, dating or playing computer games. They sit with their eyes glued to the television screen or the comics, day and night. They even never go out for meals and only have take-out food.

Why are so many young persons keen on staying at home? The development of the Internet might be the greatest incentive. Young persons can enjoy various information, games and entertainment ways without getting out. Besides, many people believe that staying indoors is cheap, comfortable, and most importantly, very safe.

Personally, I don't think staying indoors for too long time should be advocated, especially for young persons. Lack of physical exercise and face-to-face communication with others will do harm to people's body and mind. In my opinion, people in all ages should be encouraged to spend more time outdoors to enjoy the sunshine, the green space, and interact with other people.

热点演练 5

框架搭建：由图画和指示内容可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画概述大学生花钱没有节制的现象；第二段说明造成大学生这种消费习惯的原因；第三段谈谈“我”对这种消费习惯的看法并给出相关建议。

High Expenditure of College Students

As is vividly depicted in the picture, many college students spend money like water and have no concept of thrift in their mind. They buy whatever they like without considering the price and their parents' financial ability.

There are three main reasons behind this phenomenon. Firstly, some parents and grandparents spoil children so much that they think their spending money as they wish should get little cause for criticism. Secondly, with the improvement of living standard, parents can afford higher expenditure of their children. Finally, various

fashionable goods have great attraction to young students. To buy them certainly needs more money.

From my point of view, it is unhealthy for us college students to have this kind of spending habit. Whether the financial condition of our family allows our extravagant spending or not, we should limit our expenditure on daily necessities. Learning to be thrifty can help us form right values and is favorable to our future development.

热点演练 6

框架搭建：由图画和提示内容可知，本文应为一篇现象解释类作文。根据题目要求，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述目前智能手机的流行情况；第二段结合图画说明过分使用智能手机带来的负面影响；第三段阐述“我”是如何看待智能手机的，并针对智能手机的使用提出“我”的建议。

The Increasing use of smartphones

These days the smartphone has been gaining great popularity. Everyday people spend a lot time taking pictures, uploading their friend circles in We Chat and their micro blogs by their phones. It can be seen everywhere that people bend their heads and use their fingers to prick the keys of the phones.

More and more people have become dependent on this little gadget. We often can see smartphone addicts attend to their phones, ignoring everything. When touring, they are busy taking photos and updating micro blogs but ignore the scenery. When meeting with friends, they are busy playing the phones with little communication with friends. Some even fail to take proper actions in case of emergency, just as the crowd in the cartoon do. Their only goal seems to be attracting as much attention online as possible.

As far as I am concerned, the invention of the smartphone is a gift for us and also a curse. It has brought much convenience and fun, but we should try to avoid being too much dependent on it.

热点演练 7

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述 BBS 在大学生中广泛流行的情况；第二段说明大学生喜欢 BBS 的原因；第三段谈谈“我”对 BBS 的看法。

The Popularity of BBS

BBS, whose full name is Bulletin Board Service, is gaining its wide popularity among college students. Nowadays, almost every university has its own BBS. And everyday many students visit it, by which they make comments and communicate with one another.

The popularity of BBS is mainly due to the following reasons. Firstly, BBS is an open space and provides a free communication platform, by which students can express themselves at will. Secondly, there is a variety of information on BBS, from which students can find whatever they need. Thirdly, BBS provides students more chance to know one another. They can make more friends with common interests and hobbies.

In my view, our college students can benefit a lot from BBS. We not only gain much fun but also much useful information. However, it is worth noting that as BBS is an open space, there is inevitably the issue of information chaos. Therefore, we must strengthen our critical ability to evaluate the BBS information.

热点演练 8

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述网络犯罪出现的背景及问题现状；第二段指出解决网络犯罪问题的紧迫性，说明解决办法；第三段从大学生的角度谈谈应该如何应对网络犯罪。

Cyber Crimes

With the popularization of Internet, cyber crimes have become a serious problem. Cyber criminals seem to be everywhere on Internet. For example, some commit fraud, lift intellectual property, snatch passwords or disrupt e-commerce by illegal way.

These crimes destroy network security greatly and make computer users suffer great losses. It's high time for us to take effective measures to fight against cyber crimes. On one hand, we should reinforce the cyber laws to punish cyber criminals strictly and develop high techniques to improve intrusion detection and prevent cyber crimes. On the other hand, more talented people should be trained and more effective firewalls should be built up.

As a college student, we have responsibility to join the battle against cyber crimes. Above all, we should obtain necessary knowledge about the prevention of cyber crimes. Besides, we should be honest to others on Internet and not release or spread unreal information. In a word, it takes our common efforts to defeat cyber crimes.

热点演练 9

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇论证观点类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段解释“谋事在人，成事在天”的含义，阐述其中蕴含的道理；第二段举例论证该道理；第三段重申该谚语的正确性，呼应第一段。

Man Proposes, God Disposes

There is a widespread proverb, “Man proposes, God disposes”, which means that the planning lies with man, the outcome with Heaven. This proverb reflects a relation between success and luck, that is, we should always work hard in order to achieve our goal, though sometimes we may meet unexpected things.

Let me take English study for example. A student spends much time and energy on English, and he has good study habits. He is supposed to receive good grades in the examination. But suppose something unexpected, like illness, occurs, and his final score is far from ideal. Should he lose heart and become pessimistic? Of course not. What he should do is just keep it up, and next time luck will most probably favor him.

From my point of view, luck does influence or even dominate us sometimes, but in any case we are the master of our own fortune. It is up to ourselves whether we want to go ahead or backward. As long as you insist working hard, your effort will pay in the long run.

热点演练 10

框架搭建：由图表内容题目要求可知，本文应为一篇图表阐释类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段根据图表中的数据描述 1990 ~ 2008 年继续教育参加人数的增加情况；第二段说明参加继续教育的人数增加的原因；第三段谈谈“我”对继续教育的看法。

A Boom in Continuing Education

From the graph, we can learn the number of participants of continuing education has kept increasing from 1998 to 2008 in X city. In 1998 there were only 20 thousand people taking part in continuing education, but by 2007, it has reached 660 thousand. It can be seen easily that continuing education is gaining its more and more popularity.

The following reasons are responsible for this boom in continuing education. Firstly, during the work many people begin to realize what they have learned in schools is far from enough. So they turn to continuing education. Moreover, as the

science and technology in China are developing very fast, adults after graduation have to refresh themselves. In addition, in modern society, those without bachelor's degree or above are less competitive.

As far as I am concerned, the boom in continuing education is a necessity. It provides those on-job people with chances to get advanced degrees and gain more knowledge. As our society is developing, more and more people will receive continuing education in the future.

热点演练 11

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇道理阐释类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段提出论点，解释所给哲言蕴含的道理；目标设定的重要性；第二段给出论据阐述并论证道理；第三段结合实际进一步强调目标设定的重要性。

Goal Setting Is Important

"Living without an aim is like sailing without a compass." This is a famous remark of John Rukin, one of the greatest British writers. The saying contains a very important philosophical wisdom. It tells us that goal setting is extremely important in our work and life.

Above all, goal setting provides you with direction and purpose. When you have goals, you know what you want to achieve so that you can focus on those things favorable to the realization of the goals and avoid getting distracted easily. Moreover, to set a goal according to your personal practical situation can help you know yourself better and find a way to success by overcoming your weak points and developing our strong points. Besides, a goal you want to achieve will undoubtedly provide you with motivation to work hard.

Goal setting is of great significance for today's students. It will help them reduce blindness of learning and plan their study more rationally and efficiently. But it is worth noting that we should set reasonable goals and avoid achieving something beyond our grasp.

热点演练 12

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述目前的污染问题；第二段说明如何解决污染问题；第三段总结全文，呼吁共同行动。

How to Make Our Air Cleaner

From the picture above, we can see that all the "buildings" are coughing painfully in the dirty air and the sky is dark. The picture illustrates vividly how serious today's air pollution is.

Considering its harm to our health, it is high time for us to take effective measures to reduce air pollution. On the one hand, the government should implement stricter laws and regulations on pollution. Those industries that release wastes without permission should be heavily fined. On the other hand, we should try to have a low-carbon lifestyle, such as taking public transportation instead of driving a car to reduce harmful emissions.

The protection of the environment is undoubtedly a long-term, arduous task. It needs every citizen's efforts to create a good environment with cleaner air and brighter sky. Your small change of behaviours might bring great help to the environment.

热点演练 13

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述近年来名牌大学降低标准招收名人学生的现象；第二段指出关于该现象的两种不同观点并说明各自的理由；第三段表明"我"的看法并说明理由。

Should Universities Lower Admission Requirements for Celebrities?

In recent years, many famous universities lower admission requirements for celebrities. More and more celebrities, especially sports stars, have been admitted to famous universities even without an entry examination. This phenomenon has become a topic of widespread controversy.

Some people object to it strongly. They hold that this admission pattern does not comply with the basic fairness rule of education. And if a person who has no enough academic ability is admitted to the university, it will be an insult on college education. However, still other people think it acceptable. They say that these celebrities deserve this privilege because they have proved their abilities in their field.

Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer the latter one. In my opinion, these celebrities have sacrificed much learning time for their work, so they should be provided a better chance for learning. Besides, if celebrities accept advanced education, they could serve the society better. Therefore, I suggest that people should pay more attention to these celebrities' efforts and contributions rather than the special treatment they enjoy.

热点演练 14

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述大学生热衷名牌的现象；第二段说明导致大学生热衷名牌的原因；第三段谈谈“我”对大学生追求名牌的看法并给出相关建议。

Craze in Famous Brands on Campus

In recent years there has been a craze in famous brands among college students. On campus we can see many students dressing in famous brands from head to toe. It is worth more attention that even some students from poor families also begin to join in the army following famous brands.

College students' preference for famous brands is caused mainly by the following factors. Above all, in many college students' eyes, a famous brand is a symbol of identity and position. They believe it can show their good taste. What's more, in modern society, famous brands to some extent are equal to fashion, which has a great attraction to young college students. Besides, parents' spoiling their children helps form their unhealthy consumption habit.

As far as I am concerned, it is irrational for our college students to be crazy about buying famous brands. After all, we have no income source. It is shameful to use our parents' money to satisfy our vanity. Therefore, I suggest that we should follow the consumption principle of being practical and thrifty.

热点演练 15

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇叙事分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段交代背景，引出“我”对老师的记忆；第二段说明为什么这位老师给“我”影响最深；第三段强调老师对“我”的影响，总结全文。

A Teacher of Mine Who Has Influenced Me Most

During my education, I have met many good teachers who have given me a lot of help and instruction. Among them, Mr. Li is certainly the one who has influenced me most. He was the class adviser in my high school who also taught us maths.

Mr. Li has benefited me not only in my study but also in my attitude towards life. For one thing, he is the most humorous and witty teacher I have met. His maths classes not only inspired my interest in maths but also led me to find a way of my own of studying maths well. For another, Mr. Li has taught me a lot of truths of life. I was once addicted to online games. At that time, falling grades and

parents' scolding made me feel depressed and lose the goal of life. It was Mr. Li's care and instruction that helped me out of the difficult position.

The best teachers teach from the heart, not from the book. Mr. Li is undoubtedly an outstanding teacher who has devoted his heart and soul to teaching career.

热点演练 16

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述目前电子报纸的流行，引出争议的话题——传统报纸是否会被电子报纸所取代；第二段分别阐述两种不同的观点及理由；第三段表明“我”的看法并说明理由。

Will Traditional Newspapers Be Replaced by Electronic Newspapers?

With the popularization of Internet, there are an increasing number of electronic newspapers for people to read in daily life. Instead of reading traditional newspapers, many people develop the habit of browsing news on Internet everyday. So some people propose such a question: Will traditional newspapers be replaced by electronic newspapers?

Quite a few people's answer is yes. They say electronic newspapers have many advantages over traditional newspapers. For example, they can be updated instantly. Moreover, they can provide more lively news. However, still many other people hold the opposite. They think traditional newspapers are easier to read and can leave people a warm feeling, which the computer can't give.

Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer the former one. For one thing, electronic newspapers have all the functions of traditional newspapers, so traditional newspapers lose the necessity of continuing its existence. For another, electronic newspapers make people enjoy quicker, more detailed and more colorful news. Therefore, I think it is a trend that traditional newspapers will be replaced by electronic newspapers.

热点演练 17

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述图画反映的现象：人们都在关心下一代而忽略了老人；第二段说明这一现象的主要表现；第三段对该现象做出评论。

Don't Neglect the Elder Generation

From the picture, we can see the department of nutritional products for children is surrounded by a crowd of parents, making its saleswoman extremely busy. In contrast, the neighboring department of nutritional products for the elderly does not attract any customer. Its saleswoman is so boring that she falls asleep. The picture reflects a phenomenon that people tend to care more for the next generation than the elder one.

Compared with the past, today's young parents have the ability to provide their children with a higher quality life. They spend their most time and money on their children. However, these young couples fail to give their old parents enough care either in material or in emotion, and some of them even depend on the elderly's support in all aspects.

From my point of view, this phenomenon is very distressing and irritating. Caring and honoring the elderly has been regarded as a Chinese traditional virtue for over two thousand years. At no times should the duties to old parents be neglected by young people, no matter what excuses they have. Young people should try to set a good example for the next generation by giving enough care to their old parents.

热点演练 18

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段阐述和谐宿舍生活的重要性，指出一些不和谐现象的表现；第二段说明应该如何创造和谐的宿舍生活；第三段重申和谐宿舍生活的重要性，强调保持和谐需要大家的共同努力。

How to Build a Harmonious Dormitory Life?

A harmonious dormitory life is very important to college students. With harmony, we can concentrate on our study and thus can enjoy our college life fully. But sometimes the harmony will be disturbed. For example, some students do not pay much attention to health, which affects the overall environment in the dormitory. What's worse, some members listen to music or chat very late, which influence others' study and rest.

Then how should our college students build a harmonious dormitory life? Firstly, we have to get rid of our healthy living habits since the dormitory is a public place. Secondly, we should learn to be tolerant and consider more for others so as to avoid quarrels. Finally, more communication plays an important

role in solving the problems and discrimination.

To conclude, it needs every member's effort to maintain a harmonious dormitory life.

热点演练 19

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述用人单位要求大学生求职者能够接受从基层工作干起这种现象；第二段分析这种做法的好处；第三段谈谈“我”对这种现象的看法。

The Advantages of Starting at the Bottom

In recent years, many employers require that college graduates have to be willing to start at the bottom and work up to the top. Some students might think it to be a waste of their talents. However, this kind of requirement is for both the employers' and the college graduates' sake.

Above all, college graduates, who are used to considering themselves as God's favored ones, tend to overestimate their ability and ask for a higher pay than those who have no college diploma. However, they seldom have any practical experience. In addition, new graduates often find it hard to deal with the working environment unfamiliar to them. They are in great need of starting their career from the bottom of a company and learn how to cooperate with their colleagues and the superior.

Considering the above-mentioned, we can conclude that it is necessary for college graduates to start at the bottom. But it is worth noting that we should set a right target, or else we might stop at the bottom forever.

热点演练 20

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述大学校园内的勤工俭学现象；第二段说明学生选择勤工俭学的不同原因；第三段谈谈“我”的看法。

Work-study Programs

Many college students choose to take part in work-study programs in their spare time. Some of them choose to be a tutor or doing a part-time job in school dining-room or library. Also some others do a part-time delivery man or promotion specialist, or other jobs alike.

There are mainly three different reasons for college students to take a work-

study program. First, to earn money is the main aim of many students. They want to relieve the burden on their families by doing a part-time job. Second, some students take work-study programs as a channel by which they know the society and improve their practical skills. Third, still some other students do part-time jobs just for fun or kill time.

From my point of view, college students can benefit a lot from work-study programs. But it is worth noting that study is prior to anything else. Those who take part in study-work programs should keep it in their mind. Besides, they should spend their income from these programs properly.

热点演练 21

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述员工可以在家办公这一现象，指出其有利有弊；第二段对比分析在家办公的利弊；第三段谈谈自己对在家办公的看法和理由。

The Popularity of Working at Home

With the widespread of telephone, computer and fax machine, it is not difficult to deal with work at home. However, as to the advantages and disadvantages of working at home, different people will give different opinions.

Those people who advocate working at home believe that it can save the commuting time from home to workplace, which can thereby increase working time. Moreover, working at home can guarantee people against the interference of the noise which is typically in offices. However, still others object to working at home. They argue that people are more likely to become sluggish if working at home. Besides, working at home might make companies unable to respond to those emergencies which need the joint efforts of all employees.

Weighing up the pros and cons, I do not support working at home. For one thing, it may cut off people's basic communication with their colleagues, which will result in the feeling of isolation. For another, it may decrease efficiency, since people always have housework to tend. Taking above-mentioned factors into consideration, I may reasonably conclude that people should not be encouraged to work at home.

热点演练 22

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述很多教授整天忙于搞科研的现象，引出对这种现象的批评观点，并说明理由；第二段针对该现象提出赞成观点并说明理由；第三段表明“我”的态度并说明理由。

Should a University Professor Focus on Scientific Research?

Nowadays, some professors spend most of their time on their scientific research projects. This phenomenon has caused many debates. Many people think these professors are spraying from their main task. They insist that the most important job for a professor should be teaching the students rather than writing the research papers and working on scientific projects.

However, still others don't agree this argument. They think that university professors are the main force of scientific research work. Moreover, working on scientific research can help a professor improve his professional ability, which in turn is favorable to his teaching.

In my opinion, scientific research work and teaching work are not conflicting with each other. Instead, they complement each other. But some professors are so indulged in their scientific research projects that they ignore teaching work, others even only for fame or higher position. These professors have to be reminded to make self-examination.

热点演练 23

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述大学生社会实践活动及其主要内容；第二段说明社会实践活动给大学生带来的好处；第三段指出大学生参加社会实践应该注意些什么。

Social Practice of College Students

Nowadays many universities encourage and organize students to take part in social practice activities. During the holidays, more and more students choose to be the volunteers, take part-time jobs, or take part in other practical activities alike. It's obvious that social practice is playing a more and more important role in China's college education.

Undoubtedly, college students have benefited a lot from social practice. On one hand, they are provided with more opportunities to contact the real world outside the campus and can apply their knowledge to the solution to the practical problems. So their practical skills are improved greatly. On the other hand, social practice helps strengthen students' sense of social responsibility.

Considering the above-mentioned, I think, it is necessary for college students to participate in social practice. But it should be noted that some students may spend too much time on taking part-time jobs so as to ignore their study. Therefore, we should try to balance the relationship between social practice and study.

热点演练 24

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述近年来许多大学开始实施性教育的现象，引出中国的性教育问题；第二段分析加强大学生性教育的必要性；第三段说明大学生应该如何对待性的问题。

Sex Education on College Students

In recent years, more and more universities in China have begun to put sex education programs into practice. Some related lectures held last year at XX University attracted several hundred students. This high attendance probably reflected a strong desire for more knowledge on sex.

It is quite necessary to strength sex education on college students. Nowadays, the young people can find out about sex from a wide range of sources, including advertising, television, magazines and websites. But some of these sources are inaccurate. Besides, it is well known to all, the HIV carriers are increasing in great numbers, and lack of sex education should be blamed of this. Therefore, the government and education departments have the responsibility to promote sex education.

As college students, we should take a right attitude towards sex. For one thing, we should learn some basic knowledge about sex. For another, we should take sex seriously and cautiously. To start sex behaviors is too early for college students who are not mature enough.

热点演练 25

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述什么是善意的谎言，引出人们对它的争议；第二段针对善意的谎言提出两种不同的观点并分别说明理由；第三段谈谈“我”对善意的谎言的看法并说明理由。

Is a White Lie Acceptable?

Sometimes, people have to tell a lie to someone else in order to protect him or avoid hurting his feeling. That is called “white lie”. But since it is a lie, it has always been a controversial topic.

Many people believe that a white lie is a kind of protection for both the lie teller and the lie receiver. In their opinions, if the truth might be a great hurt to

others, they should cover it. However, still others hold the opposite view. They argue that telling a lie to somebody, in fact, invades his right to know the truth. Besides, they insist that if one is informed of the truth, one can make proper decision according to his own will.

Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer the latter one. Nobody can guarantee that covering the truth to one person is best to him. Anyone should be admitted to make his own decision. But it is worth noting that the truth should be conveyed in a humane way if it might hurt others.

热点演练 26

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述近年来高校毕业生热衷报考公务员的现象；第二段说明导致这一现象的主要原因；第三段谈谈“我”对报考公务员的看法。

The Craze for the Test for National Civil Servants

In recent years, there has appeared a craze among more and more high-educated people who have participated in the test for national civil servants. Millions of graduates and postgraduates choose civil servant as their most ideal occupation.

There are the following three reasons for the kind of craze. Firstly, nowadays college students face great employment pressure. Civil servant, as one of the most stable professions in today's China, becomes their preferable choice. Secondly, in recent years the welfare and salary of civil servants have been improved greatly. Finally, the high social position of civil servants is an important factor drawing many people to choose it.

In my opinion, this craze in civil servant test will continue in the following years. However, if most high quality talents gather in the government departments, it might lead to a waste of resources. And it is unfavorable to the development of an individual's ability. Therefore, we should take full account before we decide to take part in the test for civil servants.

热点演练 27

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述年轻父母对电子产品的痴迷现象；第二段说明年轻父母痴迷电子产品对家庭教育带来的负面影响；第三段针对这一现象提出你的建议。

The Impact of Electronic Products on Family Education

The picture describes vividly a family scene where the parents don't permit their son to play the computer. However, both the father and the mother are sitting in front of a computer even when talking with their son. The picture reflects the phenomenon of today's young parents' being addicted to electronic products.

Young people tend to have weak resistance to electronic products, and young parents are no exception, which brings some problems to family education. Parents do not permit children to spend time on electronic products lest it affect their study, but parents themselves couldn't resist the temptation. Facing parents who are with a tough attitude but not being models, children generates negative feelings. This leads to the conflict between parents and children.

From my point of view, qualified parents should be children's models. When parents require children to do something, they should do it firstly. Besides, parents should take a wiser way to educate children. As to electronic products like a computer, I suggest parents give children some chance to be exposed to them in proper time rather than absolutely ban them.

热点演练 28

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述大学校园内的“占座”现象；第二段说明这种现象的不良影响；第三段谈谈“我”对“占座”现象的看法。

Reserving a Seat

We often see there is a table-cloth, a book or something else on the desk in the classroom or library, indicating the seat is taken. This kind of phenomenon is very usual on college campus. Strangely enough, few students will protest it.

Though it is for the purpose of better study for most students to take seats in advance, this kind of phenomenon has great negative effects. For one thing, this selfish behavior damages other students' interests. For another, reserving a seat violates the rule of fairness. No matter how late you come to class, the seat is still reserved for you, while many students coming earlier can not get a seat.

From my point of view, our college students should take a new look at our behavior of reserving a seat. Only if every one of us improves our self-consciousness, will it not be a difficult task to get rid of this kind of unhealthy behaviors on campus.

热点演练 29

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述“城市亮化工程”并说明其优点；第二段说明“城市亮化工程”有哪些弊端；第三段表明“我”对“城市亮化工程”的看法。

Light Project in Cities

In recent years, many big cities have launched the light project, which aims at lighting the nights of the city's streets. No doubt, this project can bring many benefits to citizens. Above all, the whole city image is improved greatly. The city appears to be gorgeous and prosperous with the decoration of thousands of lights. Besides, the citizens will feel much safer when going out at night.

However, as every coin has two sides, the light project also has some disadvantages. The most obvious one is that it costs much electricity. What's worse, excessive lights can cause light pollution and thus affect people's health and at the same time do harm to our environment.

Weighing the advantages and disadvantages, I think the light project should be continued since the citizens benefit from it. But the waste of energy must be controlled because our resources are very limited. Therefore, the government should take effective measures to reduce the waste of energy.

热点演练 30

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出对于是否应该让脑死亡的人继续呼吸人们的看法不同；第二段对比论述两种看法各自的理由；第三段谈谈“我”对这一问题的看法和理由。

Should We Use a Machine to Make Him Breathe?

Suppose a man's brain is dead because of an accident, that is, he can't think, speak or hear, should we use a machine to make him breathe? Facing this question, different people have different opinions.

Some people think that it is meaningless to keep an unconscious person alive since he can never know this. Instead, this machine only makes his family and friends hurt longer. However, other people hold the opposite opinion. They insist

that one's life cannot be announced to end so easily. Anyone has no right to do that. Besides, if his family asks the doctor not to use the machine and let him die, it might haunt them for the rest of their lives.

As for me, I am in favor of the former opinion. I think, a person whose brain is dead has lost his value as a social being. To make him go on breathing is just a console for those living people, which is of no practical meaning. Therefore, I think it unnecessary to use a machine to keep the man's breathing.